

intel

# 2920 Analog Signal Processor Design Handbook



**THE 2920 ANALOG SIGNAL PROCESSOR  
DESIGN HANDBOOK**

**AUGUST 1980**

Intel Corporation makes no warranty for the use of its products and assumes no responsibility for any errors which may appear in this document nor does it make a commitment to update the information contained herein.

Intel software products are copyrighted by and shall remain the property of Intel Corporation. Use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions stated in Intel's software license, or as defined in ASPR 7-104.9 (a) (9). Intel Corporation assumes no responsibility for the use of any circuitry other than circuitry embodied in an Intel product. No other circuit patent licenses are implied.

No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without the prior written consent of Intel Corporation.

The following are trademarks of Intel Corporation and may only be used to identify Intel products:

|                |                 |             |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| BXP            | Intelevision    | MULTIBUS*   |
| CREDIT         | Intellec        | MULTIMODULE |
| i              | iSBC            | PROMPT      |
| ICE            | iSBX            | Promware    |
| ICS            | Library Manager | RMX         |
| i <sub>m</sub> | MCS             | UPI         |
| Insite         | Megachassis     | μScope      |
| Intel          | Micromap        |             |

and the combinations of ICE, ICS, iSBC, MCS or RMX and a numerical suffix.

MDS is an ordering code only and is not used as a product name or trademark. MDS® is a registered trademark of Mohawk Data Sciences Corporation.

\*MULTIBUS is a patented Intel bus.

Additional copies of this manual or other Intel literature may be obtained from:

Literature Department  
Intel Corporation  
3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, CA 95051

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

|       |  |     |
|-------|--|-----|
| 1.1   | The 2920 Signal Processor                      | 1-1 |
| 1.2   | Typical 2920 Design Sequence                   | 1-2 |
| 1.3   | Benefits of the 2920 Signal Processor Approach | 1-4 |
| 1.3.1 | 2920 Device Benefits                           | 1-4 |
| 1.3.2 | Development-Support-Tool Benefits              | 1-4 |

## 2.0 SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

|       |   |     |
|-------|---|-----|
| 2.1   | Elements of a Digital Sampled Data System | 2-1 |
| 2.2   | Effects of Sampling                       | 2-2 |
| 2.2.1 | Aliasing Noise                            | 2-3 |
| 2.2.2 | Signal Reconstruction Distortion          | 2-4 |
| 2.2.3 | Jitter Noise                              | 2-5 |
| 2.2.4 | Quantization Noise                        | 2-6 |

## 3.0 THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

|       |  |      |
|-------|--|------|
| 3.1   | Device Operation                             | 3-1  |
| 3.1.1 | Overview of the 2920                         | 3-1  |
| 3.1.2 | Analog Operations                            | 3-2  |
| 3.1.3 | Digital Operations                           | 3-2  |
| 3.2   | A Closer Look at the Functional Elements     | 3-2  |
| 3.2.1 | EPROM Section                                | 3-2  |
| 3.2.2 | Arithmetic Unit and Memory                   | 3-3  |
| 3.2.3 | The Analog Section                           | 3-7  |
| 3.3   | Basic 2920 Performance Parameters and Limits | 3-10 |

## 4.0 BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

|       |  |     |
|-------|--|-----|
| 4.1   | Arithmetic Building Blocks                         | 4-1 |
| 4.1.1 | Elementary Arithmetic                              | 4-1 |
| 4.1.2 | Multiplication by a Constant                       | 4-1 |
| 4.1.3 | Multiplication by a Variable                       | 4-3 |
| 4.1.4 | Division by a Variable                             | 4-5 |
| 4.2   | Realizing Relaxation Oscillators                   | 4-6 |
| 4.2.1 | Reset Technique for Relaxation Oscillator          | 4-6 |
| 4.2.2 | Overflow Technique for Relaxation Oscillator       | 4-7 |
| 4.3   | Voltage Controlled Oscillators (VCO's)             | 4-7 |
| 4.4   | Oscillators Based on Unstable Second-Order Section | 4-8 |
| 4.5   | Gain Controlled Oscillator                         | 4-8 |
| 4.6   | Realization of Non-Linear Functions                | 4-9 |
| 4.6.1 | Simulation of Rectifiers                           | 4-9 |
| 4.6.2 | Simulation of Limiters                             | 4-9 |

## 5.0 SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

|       |   |     |
|-------|---|-----|
| 5.1   | Characteristics of "Ideal" Filters        | 5-1 |
| 5.1.1 | The Rectangular Filter                    | 5-1 |
| 5.2   | Minimum Phase Filters                     | 5-2 |
| 5.2.1 | Butterworth Filters                       | 5-2 |
| 5.2.2 | Chebyshev Filters                         | 5-2 |
| 5.2.3 | Elliptic Function Filters                 | 5-2 |
| 5.2.4 | Bessel and Gaussian Filters               | 5-3 |
| 5.2.5 | Transitional Gaussian/Butterworth Filters | 5-3 |
| 5.2.6 | Other Minimum Phase Filters               | 5-3 |
| 5.2.7 | Comparison of Minimum Phase Filters       | 5-3 |

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

|                   |   |      |
|-------------------|---|------|
| 5.3               | Non-Minimum Phase and Allpass Networks .....                    | 5-4  |
| 5.4               | Review of Analog Filter Characteristics .....                   | 5-4  |
| 5.4.1             | Effects of Pole/Zero Location on Filter Parameters .....        | 5-4  |
| 5.4.2             | Transient Response and Selectivity .....                        | 5-5  |
| 5.5               | Digital Filters .....   | 5-6  |
| 5.2.1             | IIR Filters .....   | 5-7  |
| 5.5.2             | FIR Filters .....   | 5-7  |
| 5.5.3             | Canonical Forms of Digital Filters .....                        | 5-7  |
| 5.5.4             | Matched Z Transform .....                                       | 5-9  |
| 5.5.5             | Bilinear Transform .....  | 5-10 |
| 5.6               | Implementing Filters with the 2920 .....                        | 5-11 |
| 5.6.1             | Simulating Single Real Poles .....                              | 5-12 |
| 5.6.2             | Simulating Complex Conjugate Pole Pairs .....                   | 5-13 |
| 5.6.3             | Realizing Zeros in Basic Filter Sections .....                  | 5-14 |
| 5.6.4             | Complex Conjugate Zero Pairs .....                              | 5-14 |
| 5.6.5             | Some Practical Considerations .....                             | 5-15 |
| 5.6.6             | Very Low Frequency Filters .....                                | 5-16 |
| 5.6.7             | Filters at a Multiple of the Sampling Rate .....                | 5-17 |
| 5.6.8             | Other Filter Structures .....                                   | 5-17 |
| <b>6.0</b>        | <b>ADVANCED TECHNIQUES</b>                                      |      |
| 6.1               | Time Variable Filters .....                                     | 6-1  |
| 6.2               | Noise Generation with the 2920 .....                            | 6-4  |
| 6.3               | Digital Input/Output .....                                      | 6-4  |
| <b>7.0</b>        | <b>APPLICATION EXAMPLES</b>                                     |      |
| 7.1               | Sweeping Local Oscillator .....                                 | 7-1  |
| 7.2               | Piecewise Linear Logarithmic Amplifier .....                    | 7-2  |
| 7.3               | Digital Filter .....  | 7-5  |
| 7.4               | The 2920 as a Spectrum Analyzer .....                           | 7-7  |
| 7.4.1             | Description of Spectrum Analyzer .....                          | 7-7  |
| 7.4.2             | Block Diagram Description .....                                 | 7-7  |
| 7.4.3             | Sampled Data System Considerations .....                        | 7-9  |
| 7.4.4             | Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing .....               | 7-10 |
| <b>8.0</b>        | <b>DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS</b>                                    |      |
| 8.1               | 2920 Debugging Procedures .....                                 | 8-1  |
| 8.2               | Description of Application Breadboard .....                     | 8-2  |
| 8.2.1             | Layout Considerations .....                                     | 8-2  |
| 8.2.2             | Parts List .....  | 8-5  |
| <b>9.0</b>        | <b>2920 SUPPORT TOOLS</b>                                       |      |
| 9.1               | The Assembler .....   | 9-1  |
| 9.2               | The Simulator .....   | 9-1  |
| 9.2.1             | Concept of Simulation, Testing and Debugging .....              | 9-1  |
| 9.2.2             | Modes of Operation .....  | 9-2  |
| 9.2.3             | A Generalized Simulation Session .....                          | 9-3  |
| 9.3               | The 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler ..... | 9-3  |
| <b>APPENDIX</b>   |   |      |
| <b>REFERENCES</b> |   |      |





# CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

This handbook provides the background review and design examples that will help the reader to understand analog signal processing applications using INTEL's digital signal processing system, the 2920. The 2920 uses digital sampled data techniques to implement continuous analog functions. In another words, analog signal processing can now be performed with digital signal processing techniques using the 2920.

Before looking at digital signal processing, it is useful to clarify the distinctions between signal processing and digital processing. Signal processing deals with continuous analog waveforms, whereas digital processing operates on data that are represented in a digital form. Digital signal processing would then be the operation on digital representation of continuous signals.

Digital signal processing, in the most general sense, means creating, altering, or detecting continuous signals, using digital rather than analog or electro-mechanical implementations. Furthermore, signal processing can be distinguished from data processing in that the former implies that real-time processing is needed. Data processing, however, implies the manipulation of data (which may or may not represent an action occurring presently) in a batch or off-line manner, where the need for the result is not a function of real-time.

Most digital microprocessors are designed for data processing, not for high-speed complex signal processing. The industry-standard 8080/8085 microprocessor system can operate as a signal processor at frequencies to only a few hundred hertz, and will require multiple chips with a separate analog/digital conversion system and I/O circuitry.

By contrast, general signal processing frequencies are in the kilohertz range (thousands of cycles per second). Many signals, such as speech, heartbeat, and seismic waveforms are complex, and in many cases, multiple signals must be processed in parallel. Because of different requirements for signal processing, a general purpose microprocessor is not well suited for signal processing applications. A different processor architecture is required to implement signal processing algorithms.

## 1.1 The 2920 Signal Processor

The 2920 Signal Processor is a single chip microcomputer designed especially to process real-time analog signals. The 2920 has on-board program memory, scratchpad memory, D/A circuitry, A/D circuitry, digital processor, and I/O circuitry. It is more than a single device, but is a complete digital sampled data system. The architecture and instruction set was developed to perform precise, high speed signal processing. The processor executes its programs at typically 13,000 times a second when used with a 10 MHz clock and full program memory. Each execution (1 pass of the 2920 program memory) can process up to four input signals and up to eight analog output signals. The processing speed allows signals with bandwidths to 5 kilohertz to be processed; shorter programs permit higher bandwidth. Its capabilities in signal processing are diverse and powerful, and include an extremely broad range of applications.

Some of the signal processing functions the 2920 can implement are shown in Table 1-1. It is important to note that these are fundamental building block functions which corresponds to functional blocks in an application block diagram. These are some of the building blocks that can be linked together to implement complex applications. Table 1-2 shows some of the possible application areas for the 2920 Signal Processor.

The 2920 Signal Processor can implement any of the listed functions under program control. Many functions can be realized on the same chip. Interleaving multiple inputs or outputs allows for several independent circuits or a single highly complex one to be implemented. Even higher complexity can be achieved by cascading 2920s. If increased speeds are desirable, several 2920s can be used in serial or parallel to achieve this. In most cases, complete signal processing applications are implemented on a single device.

The 2920 Signal Processor is only part of the solution. Since a large part of the cost in producing a product is the development time needed to design, test, and integrate the new circuit into the final product, the 2920 support package has been developed. It provides the software and hardware necessary to take a design from concept to implementation on the 2920 Signal Processor. This system combines a standard INTEL Intellec Series II microcomputer development system with the signal processing support package (SPS-20) to provide a powerful set of hardware and software support tools. This is described in Chapter 9.

# INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

**Table 1-1. Signal Processing Functions**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>FILTERING</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Complex poles and zeros</li> <li>— Arbitrary digital filter configurations</li> <li>— Multiple parallel or cascaded filter combinations</li> <li>— High accuracy and stability</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>WAVEFORM GENERATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Arbitrary waveforms, e.g., sine, square, triangle, etc.</li> <li>— Broad frequency range with high resolution</li> <li>— 9-bit amplitude accuracy</li> <li>— Controllable with external signals (analog or digital inputs)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>MODULATION/DEMODULATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Amplitude, frequency and phase modulation</li> <li>— Continuous or digital, e.g., FM and/or FSK</li> <li>— Analog or digital inputs and outputs</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>NONLINEAR FUNCTIONS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Full wave rectifiers</li> <li>— Limiters</li> <li>— Comparators</li> <li>— <math>\sum_N A_N X^N</math></li> <li>— Multiply/Divide</li> <li>— <math>E^X</math></li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>PROCESSING</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Phase locked loops</li> <li>— Adaptive filters</li> <li>— Pipeline processing using multiple 2920s</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
|---|--|

**Table 1-2. Broadly Based 2920 Signal Processor Applications Base**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TELECOMMUNICATIONS</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— DTMF/MF receivers</li> <li>— Modems</li> <li>— Tone/cadence generators</li> <li>— FSK/PSK mod/demod</li> <li>— Adaptive equalizers .</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>PROCESS CONTROL</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Transducer linearization</li> <li>— Remote feedback control</li> <li>— Remote data link</li> <li>— Signal conditioning</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>SIGNAL PROCESSING</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Waveform generators</li> <li>— Correlators</li> <li>— Digital filters</li> <li>— Adaptive filters</li> <li>— Speech processing</li> <li>— Seismic processing</li> <li>— Sonar processing</li> <li>— Transducer linearization</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>GUIDANCE AND CONTROL</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Missile guidance</li> <li>— Torpedo guidance</li> <li>— Motor control</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>SPEECH PROCESSING</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Vocoders</li> <li>— Speech analysis</li> <li>— Pitch extraction</li> <li>— Speech synthesis</li> <li>— Speech recognition</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>TEST AND INSTRUMENTATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Phase locked loops</li> <li>— Frequency locked loops</li> <li>— Scanning spectrum analyzer</li> <li>— Digital filters</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>INDUSTRIAL AUTOMATION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Position and rate control</li> <li>— Communication links</li> <li>— Servo links</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
|---|--|

## 1.2 Typical 2920 Design Sequence

Designing with the 2920 Signal Processor is best thought of in terms of the building block functions it can implement and the application models already available as 2920 routines (see Chapter 7). The designer should consider short 2920 assembly language routines as tools which can be combined to achieve the desired system function.

The first operation for the designer is to develop a detailed system block diagram similar to one for a continuous analog design. Each block is then realized in 2920 code and arranged in a suitable sequence. The 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler (SPAS-20) can be used interactively to facilitate developing the precise code to meet design constraints. The code can then be assembled as individual functional blocks or as an entire system. Once the functions or system has been assembled, it can be debugged via use of the simulator.

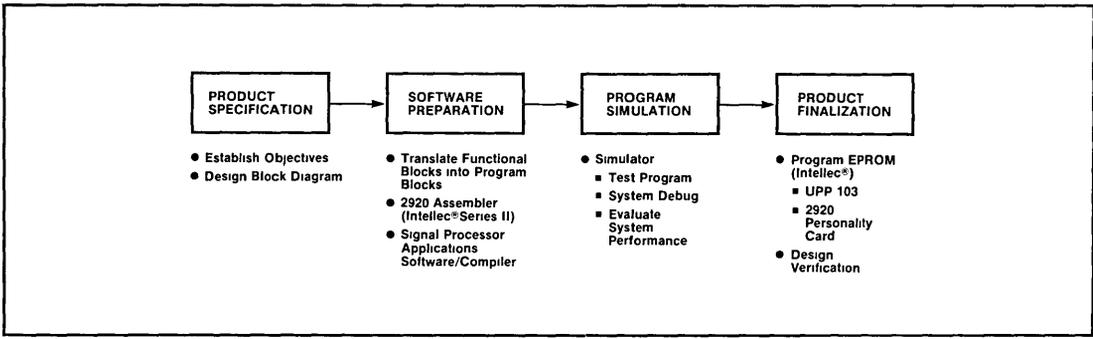
# INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

The AS2920 Assembler tests the logical sequence, syntax, and editing of the program, and issues error or warning messages. When assembly is successful, the code used to program the EPROM is created. This code is also used as the program input to the SM2920 Simulator.

The Simulator can be used to test the actual operation of the 2920 program. For example, the first step of such a test might be to specify an input waveform; such as a sweeping sinusoid for a filter application, which will test the performance of the filter over different frequencies.

If a problem occurs, i.e., unexpected or erroneous output, the debugging tools of the Simulator can be called into action to test variables at different points of the 2920 program.

If a program change is needed, it can be implemented immediately within the Simulator, by directly changing the contents of the program through the Intellec system keyboard. The revised program is then tested anew. Every parameter of the 2920's operations can be tested, changed, traced, or stored on diskette files for later analysis or documentation.



**Figure 1-1. 2920 Design Sequence**

**Table 1-3. Development System Provides Computer Aided Design Contrast Between Discrete Component and 2920 Design Methodologies**

| Task                      | Discrete Component  | 2920 Approach   | 2920 Benefits  |
|---------------------------|---|---|--|
| 1. Specify Product        | Develop Block Diagram   | Develop Block Diagram   | Same starting point  |
| 2. Develop Prototype      | A. Design Circuits<br>B. Design Breadboard<br>C. Build Breadboard<br>—Locate parts<br><br>—Put together | A. Translate block diagram into program<br>B. Use Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler<br>C. Assemble program | Reduce 2-3 weeks to 2-3 days                                   |
| 3. Troubleshoot prototype | A. Input signal<br>B. Observe output with scope and DVM or Spectrum Analyzer                            | Via Simulator<br>A. Specify input signal<br>B. Observe output and RAM contents  | Use classic troubleshooting techniques on interactive terminal |
| 4. Correct Errors         | A. Replace Component<br>B. Redesign layout<br>C. Redesign circuit<br>D. Go back to 3                    | A. Edit and assemble program<br>B. Go back to 3   | Reduce 3 degrees of error to 1; save time                      |
| 5. Documentation          | Write down observation data, and write report   | Data recorded on development system in an easy to follow report   | Accuracy increases; Time savings                               |

# INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

---

When the simulation indicates the program is operating to specifications, it can be stored on a diskette. The latest version can then be loaded into the 2920 device for testing in the hardware prototype.

Figure 1-1 outlines the development sequence for a 2920 design. There are several important points to note that makes the 2920 much more efficient for a system design:

- 1) With the 2920, hardwired analog functions are now implemented with flexible software,
- 2) Instead of designing circuits for each of the building blocks of the block diagram, a sequence of 2920 instructions are used to implement each of the blocks,
- 3) Instead of building hardware prototypes early in the design phase of the product development, the 2920 uses a computer-aided design and debug package to facilitate design and development, and
- 4) There is no need for a hardware prototype until such a time that the system has been simulated and found to be completely functional and meets design specifications.

Table 1-3 shows the contrast in design methodologies for a 2920 design and one using analog components. Numerous benefits derive from using the 2920 development system for signal processing design and implementation. The digital methodology, with its unique tools (see Chapters 3 and 9) to aid designing and debugging, helps to:

- a) standardize the design process, and
- b) allow for immediate changes. Thus it can
- c) reduce drastically the time needed for creating new products or for modifying prior work to fix errors or to add new features.

## 1.3 Benefits of the 2920 Signal Processor Approach

The 2920 is a solution for many signal processing needs. It is a complete system in a single 28-pin package. Along with 2920 are all the design and development tools required to move a product idea into finished product. The 2920 uses a digital sampled data system approach for signal processing applications. The digital sampled data approach brings many attributes to signal processing. Table 1-4 summarizes some of these benefits.

### 1.3.1 2920 Device Benefits

Lower manufacturing cost for 2920-based products results from a lower part count, improved reliability,

and the elimination of costly precision components. Also eliminated is the production re-tuning or 'tweaking' so often required in analog systems integration.

The flexibility for rapid design changes in prototypes is a direct result of the 2920's programmability. Alternative designs are readily compared by reprogramming the 2920's EPROM. The re-use of standard debugged program blocks facilitates the creation of alternatives in both existing and future products.

The digital approach provides inherently stable, predictable, and reproducible results. The NMOS integrated circuitry means increased reliability. Conceptual errors or inefficient implementation choices are easily found during debugging and performance evaluation using the 2920 Simulator. The performance you design for is the realized performance.

Savings in long-term product maintenance, support, and enhancement result from the relative ease with which engineering changes are implemented in software. Field maintenance is reduced by digital stability and LSI reliability.

### 1.3.2 Development-Support-Tool Benefits

Long term savings in large part are derived from the 2920 support package. The 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler (SPAS-20) contains very powerful code generation and macro capabilities, plus graphics and analysis capabilities permitting interactive specification and adjustment of design parameters. Creating usable libraries of macros and signal processing routines means ever increasing productivity due to building on the successes of the past.

The 2920 Assembler creates the actual machine bit patterns to be programmed into the 2920. Its careful error analysis detects problem areas, and the debugging information it provides greatly facilitates design evaluation during simulation.

The 2920 Simulator permits execution of any part of a 2920 program, plus collection of trace data on variables. This tool bears a strong family resemblance to Intel's In-Circuit-Emulators (ICE). The analysis and evaluation capabilities inherent in the 2920 Simulator make possible rapid problem isolation in the field or in the factory. It can also be used to generate revised object code for a quick check on proposed fixes or enhancements. This revised code can be saved and used to program the 2920.

## INTRODUCTION AND TERMINOLOGY

**Table 1-4. 2920 Benefits**

| Discrete Analog Components  | Intel 2920 Signal Processor Methodology  |
|---|--|
| 1. Board full of components   | Single chip  |
| 2. Component matching: select, test, combine, match, tune, test                               | System tweaking eliminated because performance from device to device is identical: digital processing is stable, predictable, and repeatable   |
| 3. Production-lot variation in circuit performance  | Digital accuracy is repeatable   |
| 4. Performance degradation over time, signal degradation, due to circuit interaction or noise | Eliminated—the 2920 restricts degradation of signal quality to the instants at which signal samples are digitized and converted back to analog   |
| 5. Discrete component tolerances prohibit exact matching of multi-pole frequency              | Restriction eliminated because digital realizations are not subject to such tolerances   |
| 6. Time-consuming fixes to problems with hardwired design                                     | Quick program changes  |
| 7. Costly components for accuracy   | Not needed because their functions can be created in software  |
| 8. Custom designs are costly, risky, and require or create heavy commitments                  | Programming permits vastly greater flexibility for modifications, improvements, and extra features;<br><br>Much wider range of options at reduced costs, size, weight and maintenance. |







# CHAPTER 2

## SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

### 2.0 SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

Sampled data systems can be implemented using either analog or digital processing techniques, or both. Figure 2-1 shows two different types of sampled data systems: sampled analog system and sampled analog/digital system. Examples of sampled analog systems include transversal filters using CCD or bucket brigade shift registers analog weighted-taps and switched capacitor techniques to implement a filter characteristic. The identical systems can also be implemented using digital instead of analog processing. Such systems are referred to as digital sampled data systems. This type of system can be implemented with the 2920 Signal Processor. This chapter will discuss the various elements that comprise a digital sampled data system and also look at the design considerations in representing a continuous analog signal with digital sampled data techniques.

### 2.1 Elements of a Digital Sampled Data System

The block diagram shown in Figure 2-2 illustrates the basic blocks of a general purpose sampled data system using a digital signal processor. In this configuration it is assumed that both the input and output signals are analog. This is not a necessary condition since digital signals can be considered a special type of analog signals and processed accordingly. Elements of the block diagram are discussed below.

The system in Figure 2-2 operates on the input analog signal using the indicated components in sequence:

- **Anti-Aliasing Filter**—This filter is used to bandlimit the incoming analog signal prior to sampling; thus a continuous analog filter is used. This minimizes possible distortion terms (aliasing noise) which could arise from signal frequencies that are too high relative to the sample rate (Section 2-2).
- **Input Sample and Hold (S&H)**—The filtered input signal is then sampled at a fixed rate determined by the digital processor. Each resulting sampled amplitude is held long enough for subsequent processing (such as analog-to-digital conversion).
- **Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D)**—The held analog voltage is converted to a digital word. This digital word then represents the sampled input signal voltage. (Since the processor must operate on individual digital words, it is necessary to characterize the continuous analog input signal by discrete digital words which retain the information of the original signal.)
- **Digital Processor**—Each digitized sample is now processed by the digital processor, which has been programmed to perform a predetermined algorithm. Typically, a general microprocessor can be programmed to perform any function, but the resulting execution time is too limiting for most analog applications. The 2920 eliminates this problem because its architecture is configured to take advantage of serial repetitive signal processing, while at the same time preserving many of the advantages of the general purpose microprocessor.
- **Digital-to-Analog Converter (D/A)**—The processed digital words are converted back to analog using the D/A. Again, the analog signal is approximated by discrete amplitude levels (as in the A/D). In addition, the D/A sampled output weights the signal output in the frequency domain by  $\sin(x)/x$ , thereby causing some signal distortion (Section 2-2).
- **Output Sample-and-Hold (S&H)**—One method of reducing the output frequency distortion is to widen the  $\sin(x)/x$  rolloff by resampling the output signal using a very narrow sample width. The S&H takes the D/A held output and resamples it with narrow pulses. Another use of an output S&H is to store values when several outputs are multiplexed during a single sample period.
- **Reconstruction Filter**—Since the desired output signal is a continuous representation of the processed input signal, it is necessary to remove high frequency components resulting from the D/A or sample-and-hold outputs. This, in effect, smooths the analog output from sample to sample. A lowpass filter is used to perform the signal “reconstruction”. This filter can also be used to compensate for the  $\sin(x)/x$  frequency rolloff of the D/A or S&H (Section 2-2).

# SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

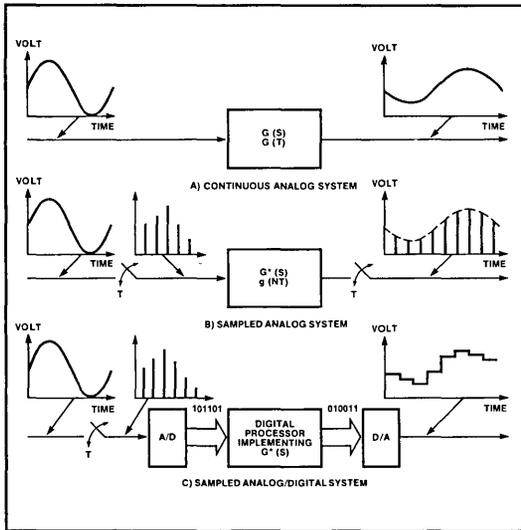


Figure 2-1. Sampled Data System

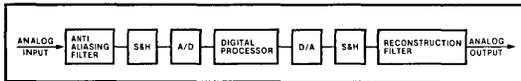


Figure 2-2. Elements of a Sampled Data System

## 2.2 Effects of Sampling

Assuming an input spectrum  $F(j\omega)$  and a sampling frequency  $f_s$ , the output spectrum for square-topped sampling  $F_{ST}(j\omega)$  is found to be

$$F_{ST}(j\omega) = \frac{\tau}{T} \frac{\sin(\omega t/2)}{\omega t/2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F[j(\omega - n\omega_s)]$$

From this equation, the gain is a continuous function of frequency defined by  $\frac{\tau}{T} \frac{\sin(\omega t/2)}{\omega t/2}$  where  $\tau$  is the sample pulse width,  $t$  is time,  $T$  the sample period, and  $\omega$  the frequency in radians per second.

The time-and-frequency-domain plots for the square-topped sampled signals are shown in Figure 2-3. Figure 2-3a and 2-3b show the signal before and after sampling. The corresponding spectra are shown in Figure 2-3c and 2-3d respectively. Figure 2-3d is a plot of the above equations where multiple spectra are formed around multiples of the sample frequency. As long as

the adjacent spectra do not overlay excessively (aliasing distortion), the continuous signal can be represented by discrete samples at that sampling frequency.

The quality of representation of a continuous signal by the sampled and digitized signal is determined by several factors: a) sampling rate b) sampling pulse width c) sampling stability and d) digitizing accuracy. The corresponding distortion terms are: a) aliasing noise b) signal reconstruction noise c) jitter noise and d) quantization noise respectively. These four factors can cause unacceptable distortion if they are not chosen properly.

By properly designing the sampled data system, these distortion or noise terms can be made insignificantly small, so that the sampled data system closely represents the analog equivalent system.

The sampled data system implementation will have the added advantages of digital processing and software flexibility. The following sections will discuss these sources of imprecision.

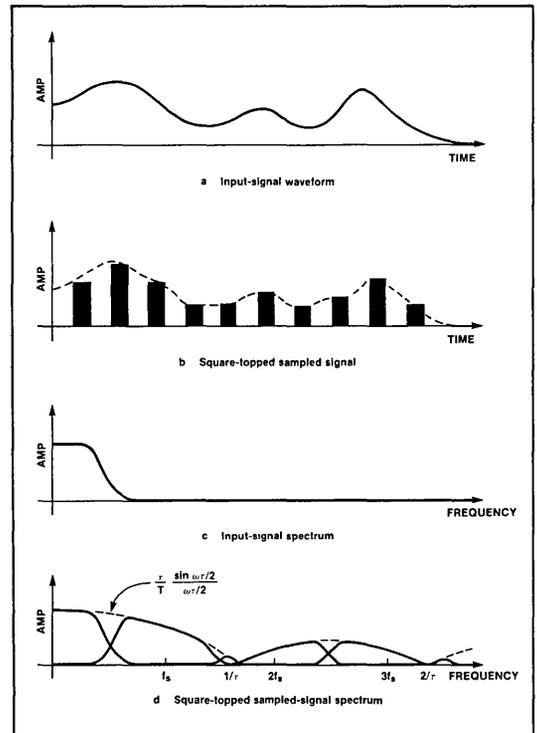


Figure 2-3. Analysis of Sampled Signal

# SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

## 2.2.1 Aliasing Noise

A sampling theorem relating the minimum required sampling frequency to the signal bandwidth can be stated as follows: if a signal  $f(t)$ , a real function of time, is sampled instantaneously at regular intervals, at a rate higher than twice the signal bandwidth, then the sampled signal contains all the significant information of the original signal. This would then define the minimum sampling frequency required. In practice, a sampling rate of 3 to 4 times the 3dB bandwidth of the input signal is not uncommon.

Figure 2-4 shows the effects of sampling rate on the separation of sampled signal spectra. When the sample rate is reduced, the adjacent spectra overlaps. The

overlapped spectral energy cannot be separated from the desired signal and so a distortion is caused called aliasing noise.

Figure 2-4 shows the effect of sample rate on aliasing noise for a given input signal. Note the amount of overlap increases as the sampling frequency is decreased for a fixed input signal bandwidth. Similarly, for a fixed sampling frequency, the overlap could be reduced by increasing the frequency. The overlap could also be reduced by increasing the frequency rolloff of the input signal by using anti-aliasing filters prior to sampling. Figure 2-5 illustrates the overlap for several types of popular anti-aliasing filters. These tradeoffs between filter selectivity and sampling frequency are part of the design process with sampled data systems. Such tradeoffs are discussed more fully in later chapters.

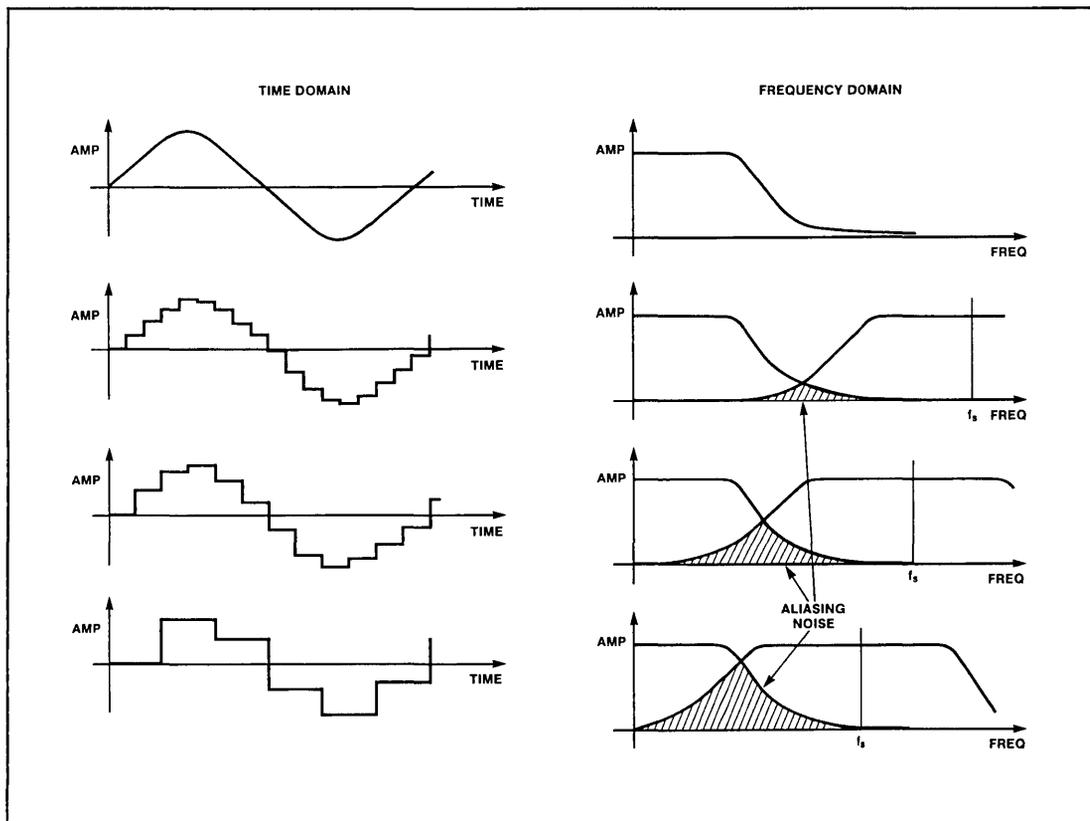


Figure 2-4. Effects of Sampling Rate on Aliasing Noise

# SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

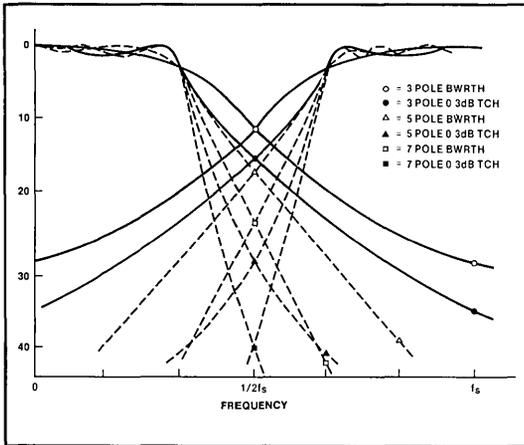


Figure 2-5. Effects of Filtering on Aliasing Noise

## 2.2.2 Signal Reconstruction Distortion

Signal reconstruction is the process that extracts the desired signal from the periodic output samples which have been formed after digital processing.

The intention is to convert the signal, which has been sampled and held after digital processing, back to analog form with a minimum loss of information. The output of a sample-and-hold circuit (S&H) or a digital-to-analog converter (D/A) has a frequency spectrum as shown in Figure 2-6 where the sample width  $\tau$  is equal to the period of the sample  $T$ . The amplitude gain factor has a noticeable rolloff within the signal bandwidth when that bandwidth approaches half the sampling frequency. Unless it is compensated for, this distortion of the input signal will cause loss of information similar to the loss from a lowpass filter with insufficient bandwidth. Table 2-1 lists the rolloff in dB as a function of the sample width  $\tau$  and the signal bandwidth  $B$ .

To correct this situation, either the reconstruction sampling pulse width should be made narrow relative to one over the signal bandwidth ( $1/B$ ), or a  $\sin(x)/x$  correction should be applied in the output filter.

Figure 2-6b shows the effect of resampling with a narrower pulse. The amount of signal energy contained in the narrower sampling pulses declines by an amount proportional to the duty cycle  $\tau/T$ . It may be necessary to compensate for this gain loss when analyzing the relative effects of fixed offsets, overshoot, ringing, and other spurious signals that degrade the desired signal.

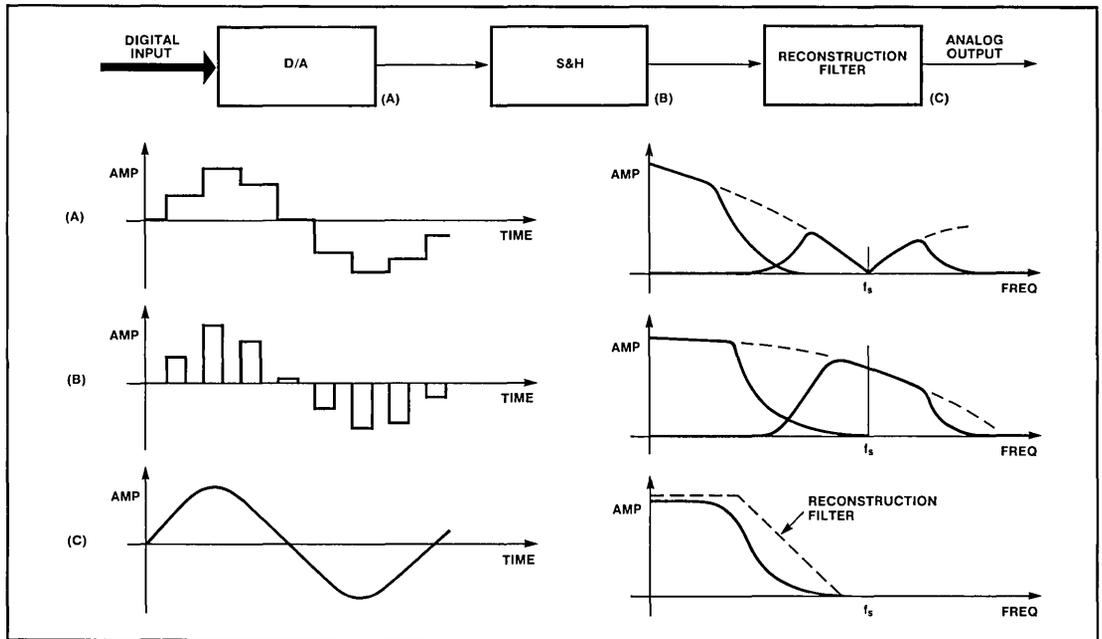


Figure 2-6. Analog Signal Reconstruction

# SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

When the data samples have been established, they are passed through a reconstruction lowpass filter whose primary purpose is to remove the higher-frequency spectra caused by the output sampling (Figure 2-6c). It can also help shape the amplitude and phase response of the output network.

**Table 2-1. Reconstruction Distortion Due to Sample Pulse Width**

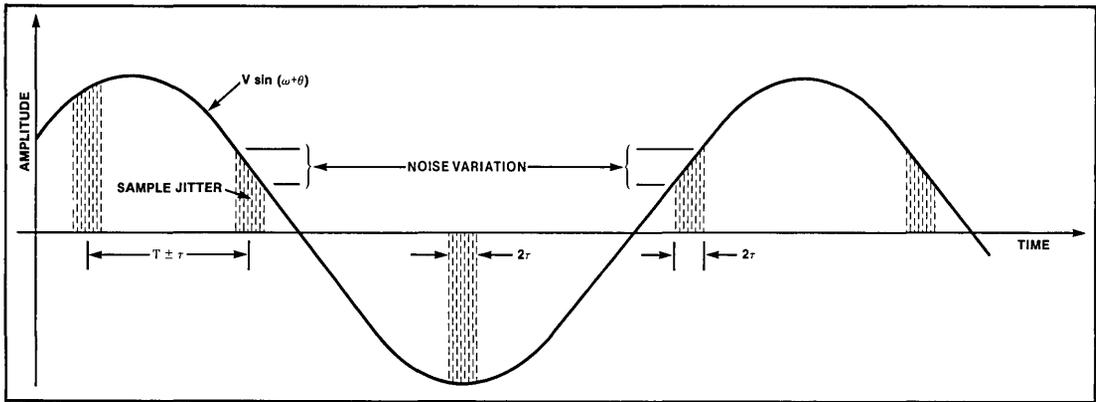
| Bτ  | $-20 \log \frac{\sin \pi B\tau}{\pi B\tau}$ |
|-----|---|
|     | dB  |
| 0.1 | 0.14  |
| 0.2 | 0.58  |
| 0.3 | 1.32  |
| 0.4 | 2.40  |
| 0.5 | 3.92  |
| 0.6 | 5.96  |
| 0.7 | 8.70  |
| 0.8 | 12.60                                       |
| 0.9 | 19.3  |
| 1.0 | ∞   |

### 2.2.3 Jitter Noise

The information content of a signal is carried in some combination of its amplitude, phase, or frequency. Noise is introduced by any process that alters the information carried to the degree that the signal cannot be restored to its original condition. An ideal sampling process assumes that ideal samples are taken at periodic intervals, i.e., that the amplitude of each sample is exactly equal to the value of the signal at the time of the sample. If the sampling waveform is not stable, then the signal will be sampled at times other than what was expected with an error corresponding to the rate of change of the sampled signal.

The jitter noise can be estimated by examining a sinusoidal input signal that is sampled with average period T and a peak-to-peak deviation of the period 2τ (Figure 2-7). Using  $\sin(\omega t_i)$  as the value of the sinusoid exactly at the i-th sampling instant, and  $\sin(\omega(t_i + \tau_i))$  as the value at the actual sampling instant, where  $\tau_i$  is the time error at that point, then the error or jitter noise at  $t_i$  is the difference between the exact and the sampled values of the signal voltage, i.e.,

$$N_J(t_i) = \sin(\omega t_i) - \sin(\omega t_i + \omega \tau_i) \\ = (1 - \cos(\omega \tau_i)) * \sin(\omega t_i) + \sin(\omega \tau_i) * \cos(\omega t_i)$$



**Figure 2-7. Sampling Jitter**

The noise power is simply the sum of the squares of its quadrature components

$$N_J^2 = [1 - \cos(\omega \tau_i)]^2 + \sin^2(\omega \tau_i) \\ = 2 - 2 \cos(\omega \tau_i)$$

Assuming that the timing errors are independent from sample to sample and uniformly distributed between  $\pm\tau$ , the expected noise power is

$$E \{N_J^2\} = \frac{1}{2\tau} \int_{-\tau}^{\tau} 2 - 2 \cos(\omega \tau_i) d\tau_i \\ = 2 - 2 \frac{\sin \omega \tau}{\omega \tau}$$

For  $\omega \tau < \pi/2$ , a Taylor series expansion of  $\sin(\omega \tau)$  yields an approximation for the mean square noise power of

# SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

$$E \{ N_J^2 \} \cong \frac{(\omega\tau)^2}{3}$$

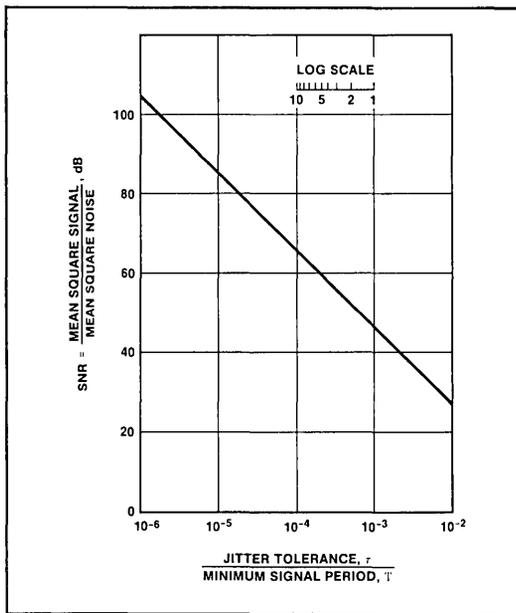
The signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) of a sampled sinusoid  $\sin(\omega\tau)$  due to jitter uniformly distributed over  $-\tau \leq \tau_0 \leq \tau$  seconds is

$$\frac{\text{Mean Square Signal}}{\text{Mean Square Noise}} = (\text{SNR})_{\text{jitter}} = \frac{1}{(\omega\tau)^2} \cdot \frac{3}{2}$$

Expressed another way,

$$(\text{SNR})_{\text{jitter}} = 0.038 \left( \frac{T}{\tau} \right)^2$$

where T is the period of the sampled signal. The jitter SNR is plotted in Figure 2-8 as a function of the jitter-tolerance ratio  $\tau/T$ .



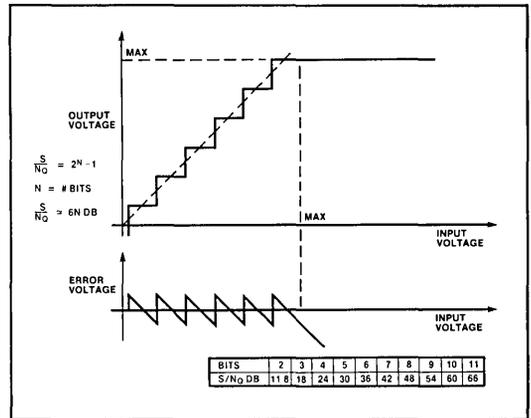
**Figure 2-8. Jitter SNR**

Since each pass of the 2920 program uses the same number of clock cycles, overall sampling jitter will be entirely a function of the clock stability. When the 2920 clock is crystal controlled, clock/sampling jitter will be insignificant.

## 2.2.4 Quantization Noise

Digital signal processing of a signal implies that at specific times the signal is sampled and a digital word is formed that represents the amplitude of the signal at that time. The sections above described the effect of this sampling process, and showed that a minimum loss of information is possible with the proper selection of the input filter and sampling frequency.

The conversion from a continuous signal to a digital signal requires that signal voltage be divided into a finite number of levels which can be defined using a digital word n bits long. An n-bit word can describe  $2^n$  different voltage steps. Signal variations between these steps will go undetected. It is therefore necessary to determine the range of signal levels from maximum to minimum that the system must operate with, to determine the number of bits needed in an A/D conversion. Figure 2-9 illustrates how the error voltage (called quantization noise) is generated. The corresponding ratio of peak signal to quantization noise, expressed in dB, is a function of the digital word length.



**Figure 2-9. Quantization Noise**

The quantizing error can be expressed in terms of the total mean squared error voltage between the exact and the quantized samples of the signal. In Figure 2-10, any signal voltage  $v(t)$  falls between the i-th and the (i+1)th levels which define the i-th quantizing interval. The error signal  $e_i$  is expressed as

$$e_i = V(t) - V_i$$

## SAMPLED DATA SYSTEMS

where

$e_j$  = error voltage between the exact and the  $i^{\text{th}}$  quantized voltage levels

$V(t)$  = input signal voltage

$V_j$  = voltage of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  quantized interval

Assuming uniform quantization and a uniform distribution of the signal voltage, the resulting signal-to-quantization-noise ratio is

$$S/N_q = M^2 - 1$$

or, represented as a logarithm,

$$S/N_q = (6) \cdot (n) \text{ dB}, n > 2$$

where

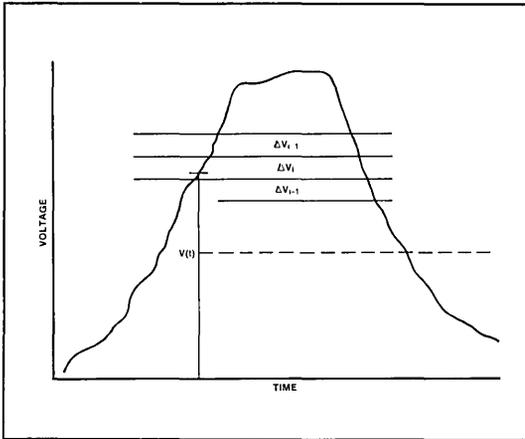
$S$  is the peak signal power

$N_q$  is the mean quantization noise

$M$  is the number of quantization levels =  $2^n$

$n$  is the number of bits in the amplitude word

The 2920 has a programmable A/D conversion of up to 9 bits of resolution, giving the device up to 54dB of instantaneous dynamic range based on quantization noise alone. For systems where the total dynamic range is  $>54\text{dB}$  but the instantaneous requirements are within this range, approaches such as automatic gain control, variable attenuators, or programmable amplifiers can be used in conjunction with the 2920. Some of these approaches are discussed in Chapters 4 and 7.



**Figure 2-10. Quantization Step**







# CHAPTER 3 THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

## 3.0 THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

This chapter will discuss the 2920 device operation functional elements and operating conventions.

### 3.1 Device Operation

#### 3.1.1 Overview of the 2920

Figure 3-1 shows a block diagram of the 2920. The 2920 is divided into three major sections: a program storage area implemented with EPROM, the arithmetic unit with data memory and the analog I/O section.

The EPROM section of the 2920 includes an instruction clock generator and program sequence counter. Signals from the clock generator and EPROM control the other two sections.

The arithmetic section includes a 40 word by 25-bit random access memory (RAM) with two ports, and an arithmetic and logic unit (ALU). One of the two input ports to the ALU is passed through a scaler (barrel shifter). The arithmetic section executes commands from EPROM, thereby performing digital simulation of analog functions in real-time.

The analog section performs analog to digital (A/D) and digital to analog (D/A) conversions upon commands from the EPROM section. The analog section includes:

- an input multiplexer (4 inputs),
- an input sample-and-hold circuit,
- a digital to analog converter (D/A),
- a comparator, and
- an output multiplexer with 8 output sample-and-hold circuits.

A special register called the DAR (for digital/analog register), acts as an interface between the digital and analog sections.

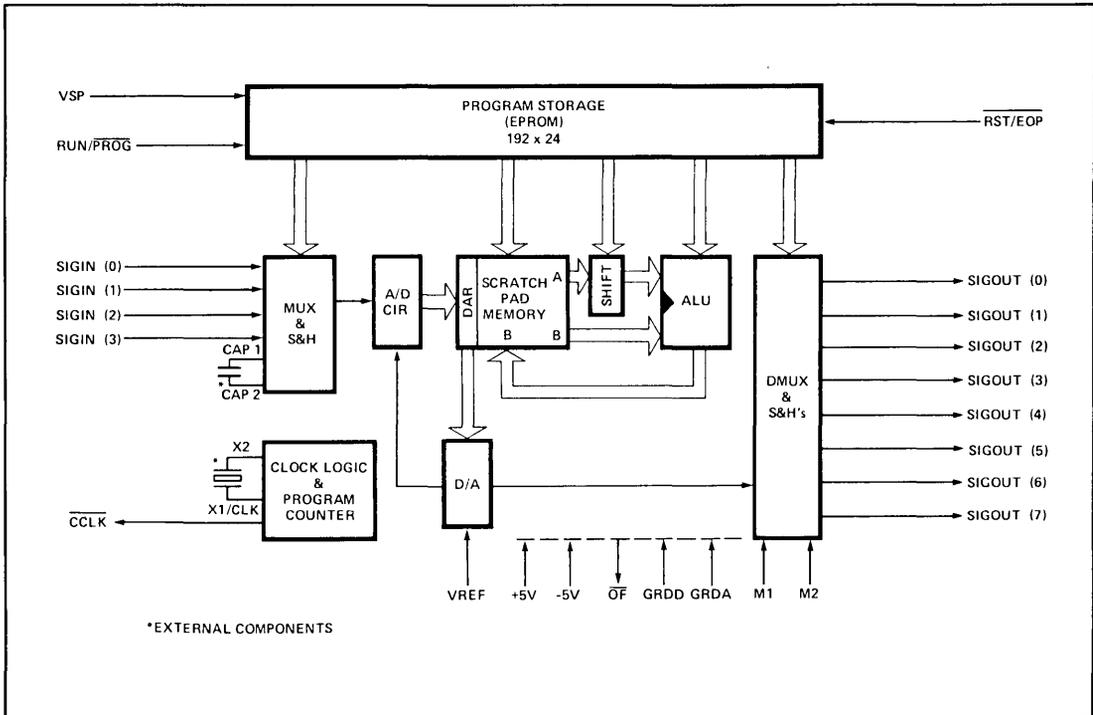


Figure 3-1. 2920 Block Diagram

## 3.1.2 Analog Operations

The basic operation of the 2920 can be seen by assuming that an input signal is to be processed, for example by a digital filter, and outputted as an analog signal. Under program control, one input would be selected from the four possible inputs, and the signal sampled and held. This signal would then be converted to a digital word with up to 9 bits of linear conversion (sign bit and 8 amplitude bits).

The bits are formed by a successive approximation A/D conversion and stored in the DAR. This DAR register is the interface between the analog and digital sections of the 2920. During A/D conversion, the DAR accumulates each bit of the digital word until conversion is complete.

This word may then be loaded into a scratch pad RAM location for further processing. When outputting a value, the 9 most significant bits of a RAM location are loaded into the DAR. Under program control, the DAR drives the D/A converter, whose output can be routed to any of 8 analog outputs by the output demultiplexer and S&Hs.

## 3.1.3 Digital Operations

The digital part of the 2920 will be operating simultaneously with the above analog operations. For example, during a 9-bit A/D conversion, a 3-pole lowpass filter could be realized using the digital circuitry. The digital loop includes the 2-port addressable 40-word RAM, a binary shifter, and the ALU. Under program control, two 25-bit locations in RAM are simultaneously addressed, with the data from the A address passing through the binary shifter. This shifter allows scaling from  $2^2$  (a 2-bit left shift) to  $2^{-13}$  (a 13-bit right shift). The scaled A value and the unscaled B value are then propagated to the ALU as operands.

The ALU operates on these values with digital instructions specified by the program. The 25-bit result of that operation is loaded into the B address location of the RAM. What makes the 2920 fast enough for real-time processing is that the entire set of actions (analog operation, dual memory fetch, binary shift, ALU execution, and write back to RAM) can take place in as little as 400 nanoseconds (depending on the clock rate).

## 3.2 A Closer Look at the Functional Elements

### 3.2.1 EPROM Section

The EPROM section contains 4608 bits of user programmable and erasable read-only memory. In normal operation of the 2920, i.e., in the RUN mode, it is arranged as 192 words of 24 bits each. Each word corresponds to one 2920 instruction. During programming, each 24-bit word is treated as six 4-bit nibbles; i.e., in PROGRAM mode the EPROM appears as 1152 words of four bits each. Figure 3-2 shows the 2920 pin connections for the RUN and PROG mode.

**Run Mode**—During the RUN mode the EPROM section acts as the system controller. Each 24-bit control word contains bit patterns that determine the operations to be performed by the analog and arithmetic sections.

The control word is composed of five fields, of which one controls the analog section and the remaining four control the arithmetic section. The four arithmetic section control fields include the two 6-bit fields which identify RAM locations, a 4-bit scaler control field and a 3-bit ALU control field.

In the RUN mode, EPROM word addresses are numbered from 0 to 191. In normal operation all locations are accessed in sequence and no program jumps are allowed. The EPROM program counter returns to location 0 upon completion of execution of the command in word 191, or when an EOP instruction is encountered in the analog control instruction field. The EOP feature allows the program to be terminated at the end of a user's program shorter than 192 words. Placement of the EOP is explained below.

The EPROM may be thought of as a crystal- or clock-controlled cycle generator as program length determines the sampling frequency of the analog signals. If an input is sampled once per program pass, the sampling frequency is  $1/NT$  where N is the number of words (instructions) in the program and T is the time required to execute one instruction.

The EPROM fetch/execute cycle is pipelined four deep, meaning that the next four instructions are being fetched while the previously fetched instructions are being executed. Although otherwise invisible to the user, this technique requires that the EOP instruction be inserted in a word with an address divisible by four,

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

e.g., program location 0, 4, ..., 188. The EOP does not take effect until the three following instructions are executed.

An open drain active low logic pin  $\overline{RST}$  may be used to display the presence of an  $\overline{EOP}$  signal or to apply an external active-low reset signal (which forces a jump to EPROM location zero). This output can sink 2.5mA, which allows connecting a 2.2K pull-up resistor, or one TTL load with a 6.2K pull-up. If the internal EOP instruction is not used, the pin may be tied to VCC or driven by a TTL or CMOS gate. An OR-tied connection may also be used. In normal operation, the 2920 does not use a reset signal, but one may be useful in applications requiring synchronization of the 2920 and other equipment. Proper operation of the EOP instruction requires an external pull-up resistor on the  $\overline{RST}$  pin.

Since  $\overline{RST}$  and  $\overline{EOP}$  are internally equivalent functions, an externally generated  $\overline{RST}$  must conform to the same rules as the program placement of EOP.  $\overline{CCLK}$  provides this cycle indication and should be used to strobe an externally supplied  $\overline{RST}$  signal.

Two pins associated with the PROGRAM/RUN mode selection are VSP and RUN/ $\overline{PROG}$ . Both pins should be tied to GRDD (digital ground) for RUN mode.

**EPROM Program Mode**—During programming, each 24-bit EPROM word is treated as six 4-bit nibbles, with the result that the EPROM is programmed as if it were organized as  $1152 \times 4$ . Table 3-1 shows the relationship between the control fields and the bit positions in each nibble. (See the sections below on the arithmetic and analog sections for details on the significance of each control bit.)

Many of the pins of the 2920 perform different functions in the PROG mode than they do in the RUN mode. These differences are noted in Figure 3-2.

Note that for the 2920 pin outs as shown in Figure 3-2, the power supply conventions are different for RUN and PROG mode. These conventions allow the programmer designer to use popular TTL family products as a basis for design. With the exception of the power connections, VSP is the only pin that requires other than 5 volt logic levels.

In the PROG mode, the four pins labelled D0 through D3 are used for both data input and output. Their direction is controlled by the  $\overline{PROG/VER}$  pin. A high level on this pin switches to input mode, a low to output. This feature allows the programmed data to be verified before proceeding to the next address. The input data must be presented in true form (logical 1=high, logical 0=low) but is read back complemented (logical 1=low, logical 0=high).

The internal counters are incremented during the falling edge of INCR. 1152 INCR transitions will complete the full program cycle. To initialize at nibble address 0,  $\overline{RST}$  must be pulsed active (low) and an INCR must be issued.

For programming the RUN/ $\overline{PROG}$  pin must be tied to VBB, the VCC pin to +5 volts, and VSP (the high voltage programming pin) should be pulsed from  $5.0 \pm .5$  volts to  $+25 \pm 1V @ 15mA$  max. The data pins D0 through D3 have open drains in the output direction; thus pull up resistors are required.

**Table 3-1. 2920 Control Bit Assignments/Programming**

| Nibble Number | Nibble Bit Assignment |      |      |         |
|---------------|-----------------------|------|------|---------|
|               | MSB (3)               | (2)  | (1)  | LSB (0) |
| 0             | ADF0                  | ADK2 | ADK1 | ADK0    |
| 1             | A2                    | B1   | A1   | ADF1    |
| 2             | A4                    | B3   | A3   | B2      |
| 3             | A0                    | B5   | A5   | B4      |
| 4             | S2                    | S1   | S0   | B0      |
| 5             | L2                    | L1   | L0   | S3      |

### 3.2.2 Arithmetic Unit and Memory

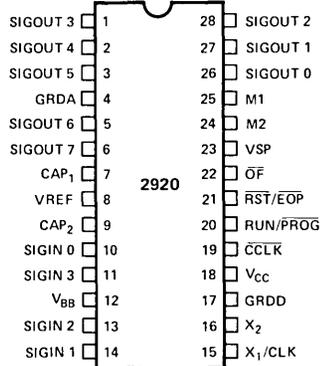
A block diagram of this subsystem is shown in Figure 3-3, which consists of three major elements: a RAM storage array, a scaler, and an arithmetic and logic unit (ALU).

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

## PIN DESCRIPTIONS (RUN MODE)

| Symbol                              | Function  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| SIGOUT                              | 8 pins corresponding to the 8 demultiplexed analog outputs (0-7)  |
| GRDA                                | Analog signal ground held at or near GRDD typically   |
| CAP <sub>1</sub> & CAP <sub>2</sub> | External capacitor connections for the input signal sample and hold circuit   |
| VREF                                | Input Reference Voltage   |
| SIGIN                               | 4 pins corresponding to the 4 multiplexed analog inputs (0-3)   |
| V <sub>BB</sub>                     | Most negative power pin set at -5 volts during run mode (different voltage in program mode)   |
| X1/CLK                              | Clock input when using external clock signals, oscillator input for external crystal when using internal clock  |
| X <sub>2</sub>                      | Oscillator input for external crystal when using internal clock   |
| GRDD                                | Digital ground  |
| V <sub>CC</sub>                     | 5 volts in run mode   |
| $\overline{CCLK}$                   | Internal fetch cycle clock output The falling edge designates the START of a new PROM fetch cycle. $\overline{CCLK}$ is 1/16 of X1/CLK rate.                |
| $\overline{RUN/PROG}$               | Mode control tied to GRDD in run mode (different voltage in program mode)   |
| $\overline{RST/EOP}$                | Low $\overline{RST}$ input initializes program fetch counter to first location. As an output it signifies EOP instruction present (open drain, active low). |

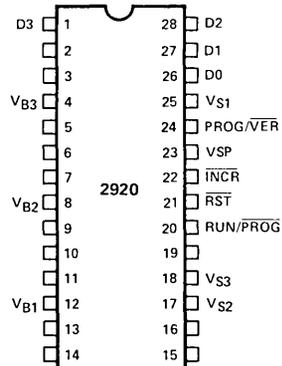
| Symbol          | Function  |
|-----------------|---|
| $\overline{OF}$ | Indicates an overflow in the current ALU operation (open drain, active low) |
| VSP             | EPROM power Pin 0 volts for RUN mode (Different voltage in program mode)    |
| M1, M2          | Two pins which specify the output mode of the SIGOUT pins (see Table 4)     |



Run Mode Pin Configuration.

## PIN DESCRIPTIONS (PROGRAM MODE)

| Symbol  | Function  |
|---|---|
| D0,D1,D2,D3   | 4 pins carrying EPROM program data for both input and output (open drain, active low output; active high input) |
| V <sub>B1</sub> , V <sub>B2</sub> , V <sub>B3</sub> | Digital ground in PROGRAM mode (different voltage for RUN mode)   |
| V <sub>S1</sub> , V <sub>S2</sub> , V <sub>S3</sub> | +5 volts in PROGRAM mode (function changes for RUN mode)  |
| $\overline{RUN/PROG}$                               | Mode control pin tied to V <sub>BB</sub> for PROGRAM mode (voltage changes for RUN mode)                        |
| $\overline{INCR}$                                   | Input pulse increments the nibble (4-bits) counter in PROG mode (function changes in RUN mode)                  |
| VSP   | EPROM power pin +5 volts for VERIFY mode and +25 volts for PROGRAM mode (different voltage in RUN mode)         |
| $\overline{PROG/VER}$                               | Controls EPROM bi-directional data bus for verify (low) or program (high)                                       |
| $\overline{RST}$                                    | Input pulse resets nibble counter to position zero for start of programming                                     |



Program Mode Pin Configuration.

Figure 3-2. 2920 Pin Descriptions

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

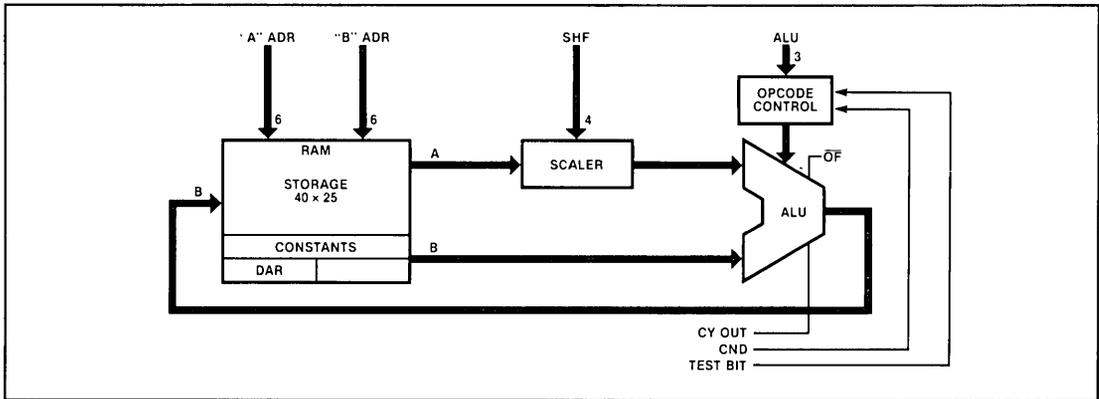


Figure 3-3. Arithmetic Unit and Memory

Data within this structure are processed using 25-bit two's complement arithmetic. It is most convenient to consider an imaginary binary point just to the right of the MSB (Most Significant Bit) which is the sign bit. Thus the normal range of any variable  $x$  is considered to be

$$-1.0 < x < 1.0$$

and the smallest resolvable change,  $\delta$ , in any variable is given by

$$\delta = 2^{-24} = 5.96 \times 10^{-8}$$

Each of the elements making up this portion of the 2920 receives command or address information from the EPROM. The storage array receives two 6-bit address fields, the scaler receives a 4-bit control field, and the ALU receives a 3-bit control field.

**The Storage Array and the Constant Array**—The storage array consists of a random access memory, with two ports, organized as 40 words of 25 bits each. Each port is independently controlled from the EPROM by a 6-bit control field.

The two ports are called "A" and "B." The A port is read-only. Data read from it are passed, through the scaler, to one input of the ALU, as the source operand. The B port passes data to the second ALU input, and receives the ALU results, as the destination operand.

The constant array consists of 16 "pseudo-locations" in the RAM address field. These constants are accessed only from the A port, i.e., only as a source operand.

The least significant four bits of the "address" are directly translated to the high-order four bits of the data field, with the remaining data bits equivalent to zeroes. Therefore, each unscaled constant is a multiple of one-eighth, from  $-8/8, -7/8, \dots$ , up to  $+6/8, +7/8$ . A much wider range of constants is actually available, because the selected constant passes through the scaler, and can thus be modified as explained below. Figure 3-4 shows the "address" mapping for constants. Table 3-2 shows the assembly language mnemonics for the constants and the corresponding values.

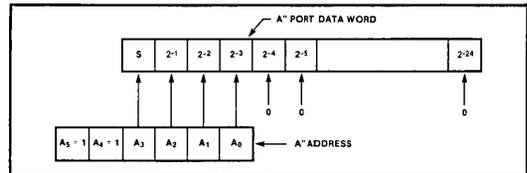


Figure 3-4. Address Mapping for Constants

Table 3-2. Constant Codes

| Constant Mnemonic | Unscaled Value | Constant Mnemonic | Unscaled Value |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| KP0               | 0 0.000        | KM1               | -.125 1.111    |
| KP1               | +.125 0.001    | KM2               | -.250 1.110    |
| KP2               | +.250 0.010    | KM3               | -.375 1.101    |
| KP3               | +.375 0.011    | KM4               | -.500 1.100    |
| KP4               | +.500 0.100    | KM5               | -.625 1.011    |
| KP5               | +.625 0.101    | KM6               | -.750 1.010    |
| KP6               | +.750 0.110    | KM7               | -.875 1.001    |
| KP7               | +.875 0.111    | KM8               | -1.0 1.000     |

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

The DAR can be used as a source or a destination operand. It is both a digital to analog register and an analog to digital register. It is nine bits wide, occupying the nine most significant bit positions of a word whose other bits are set to ones in order to correct for A/D conversion number system offset when read into the processor.

The DAR output is also tied directly to the digital to analog converter (D/A) inputs. The DAR is used as a successive-approximation register for analog to digital conversion, under control of the analog function instruction field. Each bit position of the DAR can also be tested by the ALU for conditional arithmetic operations.

**Table 3-3. Scaler Codes and Operations**

| Scaler Code | Bit Values | Equivalent Multiplier | Operation           | Scaler Code | Bit Values | Equivalent Multiplier       |
|-------------|------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| L02         | 1110       | $2^2 = 4.0$           | "A"x2 <sup>2</sup>  | R06         | 0101       | $2^{-6} = 0.015625$         |
| L01         | 1101       | $2^1 = 2.0$           | "A"x2 <sup>1</sup>  | R07         | 0110       | $2^{-7} = 0.0078125$        |
| R00         | 1111       | $2^0 = 1.0$           | "A"x2 <sup>0</sup>  | R08         | 0111       | $2^{-8} = 0.00390625$       |
| R01         | 0000       | $2^{-1} = 0.5$        | "A"x2 <sup>-1</sup> | R09         | 1000       | $2^{-9} = 0.001953125$      |
| R02         | 0001       | $2^{-2} = 0.25$       |                     | R10         | 1001       | $2^{-10} = 0.0009765625$    |
| R03         | 0010       | $2^{-3} = 0.125$      |                     | R11         | 1010       | $2^{-11} = 0.00048828125$   |
| R04         | 0011       | $2^{-4} = 0.0625$     | "A"x2 <sup>-4</sup> | R12         | 1011       | $2^{-12} = 0.000244140625$  |
| R05         | 0100       | $2^{-5} = 0.03125$    |                     | R13         | 1100       | $2^{-13} = 0.0001220703125$ |

**Scaler**—The scaler is an arithmetic barrel shifter located between the A port of the RAM and the ALU. Values read from the A port can be shifted left or right. The shifts can be a maximum of two positions to the left or a maximum of thirteen positions right. Left shifts fill with zeroes at the right; right shifts fill with the sign bit at the left.

As explained above, these arithmetic shifts are equivalent to multiplication of the A port value by a power of two, where the number of positions shifted is the 2's power.

The scaler is controlled by a 4-bit wide control field from the EPROM, as shown in Table 3-3. Note that left shifts may produce numbers which are too large to fit within a 25-bit field. The handling of such large numbers is described in the ALU section below.

**The ALU**—The Arithmetic Logic Unit calculates a 25-bit result from its A and B operands (source and destination) based on an operation code from the EPROM. The 25-bit result is written back into the B (destination) memory location at the end of the instruction cycle.

One condition for overflow is a left shift where the sense of the sign bit changes. For this reason the ALU uses extended precision to allow calculation of the correct

result even when receiving left-shifted operands from the scaler. If the computed result YY exceeds the bounds

$$-1.0 \leq YY < 1.0$$

an overflow condition is indicated. When overflow limiting is enabled, this condition causes the result to be replaced with the legal value closest to the desired result, i.e., with -1 if the computed value was negative, and with +1.0 if the result was positive.

In binary these extreme values appear as

| Binary                           | Value       |
|----------------------------------|-------------|
| 1000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 | -1.0        |
| 0111 111 111 111 111 111 111 111 | $1-2^{-24}$ |

respectively. This overflow saturation characteristic is useful for realizing certain non-linear functions such as limiters, and is beneficial to the stability of filters. The OF pin indicates that an overflow is occurred on the previous operation (cycle). This output is active low and open-drain. In the case where overflow is not enabled, each binary number is extended to 28-bit precision by extending the sign bit to the left. The calculation is done and the low 25 bits are written back to the destination.

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

The operations performed by the ALU are summarized in Table 3-5. Although most of them are self-explanatory, the following details may be useful at this point.

Absolute value (ABS) and absolute add (ABA) convert the “A” operand (source) to its absolute value before performing any calculations. Load A (LDA) and ABS are treated as arithmetic operations by the ALU, meaning that the source is added to zero and then replaces the “B” operand (destination). This causes the correct handling of those overflows caused by left shift operations.

The operation LIM sets the result to positive or negative full scale, based on the “A” port sign bit, behaving much like a forced overflow. However, the overflow flag will not indicate overflow for a LIM unless the given source operand and shiftcode would produce an overflow in an LDA operation.

The constant source codes allow you to select constants for arithmetic operations. The procedure is described in the section on the storage array of the ALU and memory. Table 3-2 above lists the mnemonics and corresponding unscaled value of each constant. Each value is passed through the scaler, and so may be multiplied by a value  $2^k$ , where k runs from +2 to -13. The scaler codes and equivalent multiplier values are shown in Table 3-3.

**Conditional Arithmetic Operations**—In addition to the basic operations described in Table 3-5, some ALU functions may execute conditionally. Certain codes in the analog/digital control field cause the execution of the arithmetic operation to be conditional on a selected bit of the DAR. The conditional instructions are tabulated in Table 3-5b.

The conditional field code selects a bit of the DAR, and uses its value to determine how the instruction is to be executed. A “1” implies execution of the instruction; a “0” implies execution of a NOP. For conditional subtract, the bit actually used is the carry from the previous result. In this case the selected bit of the DAR is set equal to the carry from the current instruction.

Conditional additions are used to multiply one variable by a second, as discussed in Chapter 4. The multiplier is loaded into the DAR, and the multiplicand is added conditionally to the partial product.

Conditional subtraction is used to divide one positive variable by another, using a non-restoring division algorithm. The divisor is conditionally subtracted from the dividend, and quotient bits are assembled in the DAR.

Conditional operations may also be useful for performing logic, also shown in Chapter 4. Table 3-4 summarizes the properties of the arithmetic section.

**Table 3-4. Memory—ALU Section Summary**

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ALU result bit width                 | 25 bits  |
| Number System                        | 2's complement   |
| Operand A                            | Read Only Memory Port A, Scaled by shifter, 28 bits wide<br>Read Port B, Unscaled, 25 bits expanded to 28 bit equivalent |
| ALU instruction field width          | 3 bits   |
| Scaler instruction field width       | 4 bits   |
| “A” and “B” port address field width | 6 bits each  |
| Ancillary Instructions               | Conditional arithmetic, op codes are part of analog control field  |
| Available Storage Locations          | “A” port, Adr0-39, Read Only, 25 bits. “B” port, Adr0-39, Read-Write 25 bits.  |
| Digital-Analog-Register              | “A” port, Adr40, Read Only, 9 MSBs, 16 LSB's are filled with 1s. “B” port, same as “A” port but read-write.              |
| Constant Register                    | “A” port only, low 4 bits of adr. Field placed in 4 MSB's of 25-bit width. Low 21 LSB's fill as 0's.                     |
| Scaler Range                         | $2^2$ (left 2) to $2^{-13}$ (right 13).  |

### 3.2.3 The Analog Section

Figure 3-5 shows a detailed block diagram of the 2920's analog section, which provides four analog input channels and eight analog output channels. It includes circuitry for analog-to-digital conversion by successive approximation, and the sample-and-holds for both inputs and outputs.

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

**Table 3-5. Memory—ALU Instruction Opcodes**

**a. Non-Conditional Arithmetic**

| ALU   | MNEM | Operation*   | Description/Comments       |
|-------|------|--|----------------------------|
| 2 1 0 |      |  |                            |
| 0 0 0 | XOR  | $B \oplus (A \cdot 2^k) \rightarrow B$                                 |                            |
| 0 0 1 | AND  | $B \wedge (A \cdot 2^k) \rightarrow B$                                 |                            |
| 0 1 0 | LIM  | $+1^{**} \rightarrow B$ if $A \geq 0$<br>$-1 \rightarrow B$ if $A < 0$ | Sign of A saturates output |
| 0 1 1 | ABS  | $0+  A \cdot 2^k  \rightarrow B$                                       | Absolute Value             |
| 1 0 0 | ABA  | $B+  A \cdot 2^k  \rightarrow B$                                       | Absolute Value and Add     |
| 1 0 1 | SUB  | $B- (A \cdot 2^k) \rightarrow B$                                       |                            |
| 1 1 0 | ADD  | $B+ (A \cdot 2^k) \rightarrow B$                                       |                            |
| 1 1 1 | LDA  | $0+ (A \cdot 2^k) \rightarrow B$                                       |                            |

\*Note—k is the value selected by the shift code,  $-13 \leq k \leq +2$

\*\*Note—the largest positive value ( $1-2^{-24}$ ) is stored.

**b. Conditional Arithmetic Operations**

ALU Functions made Conditional by selected codes in the Analog Control Field.

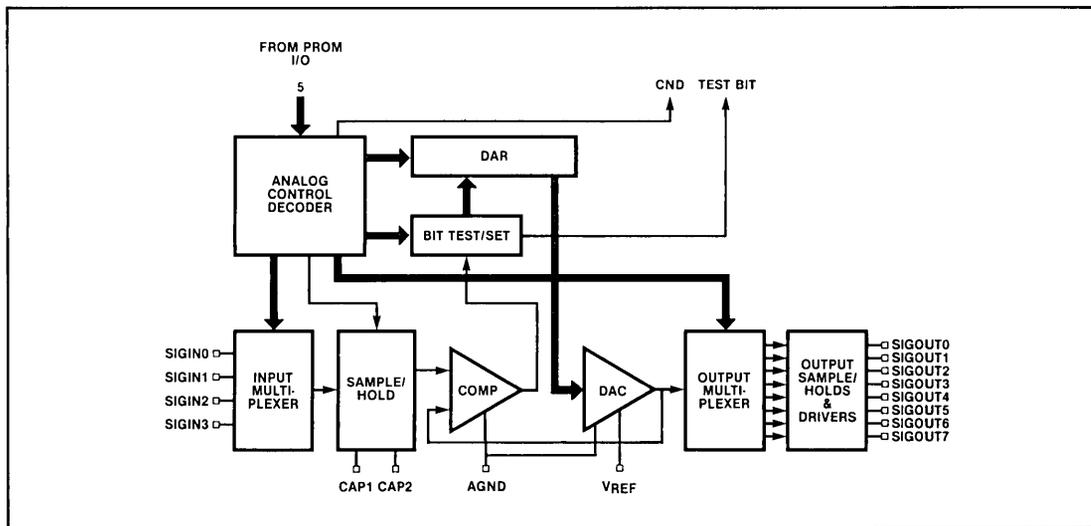
| ALU Function | Bit Tested | IF Tested Bit = 0   | IF Tested Bit = 1  |
|--------------|------------|---|--|
| ADD (110)    | DAR (n)    | NO-OP( $B+0 \rightarrow B$ )                                    | ADD ( $B+A \cdot 2^k \rightarrow B$ )                            |
| LDA (111)    | DAR (n)    | NO-OP( $B+0 \rightarrow B$ )                                    | LDA ( $0+A \cdot 2^k \rightarrow B$ )                            |
| SUB (101)    | PREV cy    | ADD( $B+A \cdot 2^k \rightarrow B$ )<br>cy $\rightarrow$ DAR(n) | SUB ( $B-A \cdot 2^k \rightarrow B$ )<br>cy $\rightarrow$ DAR(n) |

Note— DAR(n) represents a bit of the DAR, as selected by the conditional operand in the analog control field. For ADD and LDA, the selected bit is tested. For SUB, the selected bit is altered by being set to the carry output of the highest order position of the ALU; and the conditional operation is based on a test of the carry resulting from the previous ALU operation. For SUB with CNDS, CY is set to the DAR.

**c. Overflow Manipulation Operations**

| ALU Function | AD Function | Description      |
|--------------|-------------|------------------|
| ABA          | CND (K)     | Disable Overflow |
| XOR          | CND (K)     | Enable Overflow  |
| “Don’t Care” | EOP         | Enable Overflow  |

## THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR



**Figure 3-5. Analog Section Block Diagram**

All operations of this section are controlled by a five-bit control field. It can be divided into two subfields: a two-bit function selector and a three-bit modifier field. Table 3-6 summarizes the analog section operations. Giving the most significant bits first, the function select bits are designated ADF1 and ADF0; the modifier bits are ADK2, ADK1, and ADK0.

The basic analog functions are as follows:

Execution of one or more "IN" instructions provides a sample of one of the input leads. Several such instructions may need to be executed in sequence due to the time constants of the sample capacitor charging circuit.

The sample is converted to its digital equivalent by a series of "CVT" instructions in descending order. The digital equivalent is produced in the DAR, which may then be read by the arithmetic section.

Calculated results in the DAR may be delivered to an output pin via "OUT" instructions. Several such instructions may need to be executed in sequence due to the time constants of the output sample capacitor charging circuit.

Input and output sample rates are determined by the frequency of execution of input/conversion sequences and output instructions, respectively.

The input channel multiplexer consists of four analog switches which directly connect a common external sampling capacitor to the input terminals. The size of the sample capacitor affects the time constant of the sampling circuit and offset due to charge coupled through the sampling switches. The recommended values for the sample capacitor are between 100 pf and 1000 pf depending on clock rate. Acquisition time for a 100 pf sample capacitor is less than 2400 nsec. Thus, for this value of sample capacitor, a sequence of six "IN" instructions should be used to sample each input, when operating at 10 MHz.

The sample and hold capacitor may be selected based on two "cookbook" formulae:

$$S \text{ to } H \text{ offset} = V_{\text{INPUT}} (\text{PEAK TO PEAK}) / \text{Capacitance (in pf)}$$

$$\text{Acquisition Time (Seconds)} = 2400 \times \text{Capacitance (in Farads)}$$

Note that the sample capacitor is shared among all inputs. Its selection must be based on the most stringent combination of input parameters.

The analog to digital conversion system uses successive approximation via a binary search routine under program control. Using the CVTS and CVT(K) instructions in descending sequence allows up to a 9-bit digital representation of an input sample into the DAR.

The DAR is a two's complement binary register, nine bits long. When DAR values are delivered to the D/A, they are converted to sign magnitude format via a one's complement operation. This leads to a potential 1 least significant bit offset during A/D conversion, and a half least significant bit offset during D/A conversion. To compensate for the A/D offset, values read from the DAR to the processor have all bits (save the high-order nine) set to ones. D/A offset may be corrected by subtracting the value  $2^{-9}$  from the value prior to transferring it to the DAR.

Each CVT cycle sets the selected bit of the DAR to a value derived from the comparator, and also sets the next lower bit to a logic 1. Each cycle must allow the D/A to settle, so at least two NOP instructions are needed between each pair of successive CVT instructions.

Each of the 2920's eight analog output channels includes an individual sample-and-hold circuit demultiplexed from a common, buffered D/A output. A separate hold capacitor for each output channel is contained on the 2920.

There are several factors which affect the nature of the output waveform. Writing to the DAR, i.e., using the DAR as the destination, automatically activates signal conditioning circuitry in the buffer amplifier. An "OUT" operation should not appear in an instruction which writes to the DAR. For the most error-free output, the first "OUT" instruction should appear only after the time needed for the amplifier to settle; that is, it should be delayed by several instructions after the one which writes into the DAR. Acquisition time of the output sample-and-hold is typically longer than the instruction cycle, so that a sequence of several "OUT" instructions will usually be necessary.

In many applications, the output signal need only be a logic level of 1 or 0. For such functions, the 2920 has provision for using outputs in either analog or logic mode. Two input pins each control four of the outputs. These inputs, designated M1 and M2, are not TTL compatible, and are not intended to be used to switch modes dynamically while in RUN mode.

When used in logic mode, an output pin appears as an open drain circuit capable of sinking 2.5mA. Thus a CMOS or TTL gate can be driven if a suitable pull-up resistor is used.

A positive voltage reference supply must be provided by the user. The range of acceptable voltages is from +1V to +2V and is chosen to suit the application. The input and output voltage range is limited to the range  $\pm VREF$ . The D/A is a multiplying type and the step size (1 LSB) is computed as  $VREF/256$ . The current required at VREF, referenced to Analog Ground, falls in the range from  $50\mu A$  to  $250\mu A$ . Noise appearing on the VREF pin will be transferred directly to the input and output signals through the D/A. Therefore, VREF must be a noise free voltage source.

### 3.3 Basic 2920 Performance Parameters and Limits

The limits to 2920 capabilities are established by the size of the on-chip EPROM and RAM, the speed and capability of the processor, and the resolution of the A/D and D/A converters.

A program for the 2920 consists of a series of basic 2920 instructions which are executed sequentially at a fixed rate. The program allows no internal jumps, and is therefore of fixed length and execution time.

A sample interval is the time between samples of the same input channel. Normally, one pass through a program establishes a sample interval, i.e., input/output operations usually take place once per program pass. Similarly, the functions implemented by the sequence of instructions usually occur once per sample interval. However, the signal on a given input channel may be sampled more than once during a single pass through the program. In this case, sample interval is determined by multiplying the instruction-clock-period by the number of instructions between input samples.

The number of functions which can be realized with a single 2920 is established by the amount of EPROM provided and the number of RAM words on the chip. For example, a typical digital filter requires at least one RAM word per pole or two per complex conjugate pole pair. Thus the RAM limits the number of poles to less than 40, or less than 20 complex conjugate pairs. The number of EPROM words needed to realize a complex conjugate pole pair is variable, but has a typical value of approximately 10. Therefore, EPROM capacity also limits the number of conjugate pole pairs to less than 20.

# THE 2920 SIGNAL PROCESSOR

**Table 3-6. Analog Instruction Opcodes**

| <b>a. Basic Codes</b>                   |                   |                                      |      |      |
|---|-------------------|--------------------------------------|------|------|
| Code                                    | MNEM              | Function                             |      |      |
| <b>ADF</b>                              |                   |                                      |      |      |
| 1 0                                     |                   |                                      |      |      |
| 0 0                                     | IN (k), ADK= 0-3  | Acquire input k                      |      |      |
| 0 0                                     | NOP , ADK=4       | No operation                         |      |      |
| 0 0                                     | EOP , ADK= 5      | Return EPROM to Location 0           |      |      |
| 0 0                                     | CVTS , ADK= 6     | Convert Sign Position (MSB)          |      |      |
| 0 0                                     | CNDS , ADK= 7     | Conditional Arith. of Sign Bit (MSB) |      |      |
| 1 0                                     | CVT (k), ADK=0-7  | A to D convert bit k*                |      |      |
| 0 1                                     | OUT (k), ADK=0-7  | Output Channel k                     |      |      |
| 1 1                                     | CND (k), ADK= 0-7 | Cond. Arith., Test DAR bit k*        |      |      |
| <b>b. Code Assignment and Mnemonics</b> |                   |                                      |      |      |
| ADK                                     | ADF 1,0=          |                                      |      |      |
| 2 1 0                                   | 00                | 01                                   | 10   | 11   |
| 0 0 0                                   | IN0               | OUT0                                 | CVT0 | CND0 |
| 0 0 1                                   | IN1               | OUT1                                 | CVT1 | CND1 |
| 0 1 0                                   | IN2               | OUT2                                 | CVT2 | CND2 |
| 0 1 1                                   | IN3               | OUT3                                 | CVT3 | CND3 |
| 1 0 0                                   | NOP               | OUT4                                 | CVT4 | CND4 |
| 1 0 1                                   | EOP               | OUT5                                 | CVT5 | CND5 |
| 1 1 0                                   | CVTS              | OUT6                                 | CVT6 | CND6 |
| 1 1 1                                   | CNDS              | OUT7                                 | CVT7 | CND7 |

\*Note—The DAR bits are designated S, 7, 6, .... 0, where S is the sign bit, 7 the next most significant bit, etc. Conversion of bit k consists of setting bit k to a value determined by the comparator, and bit k-1 equal to a logic 1.







# CHAPTER 4

## BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

### 4.0 BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

The Intel 2920 Signal Processor is typically thought of in terms of the functions it can implement, rather than in terms of its architecture, as is more common with microprocessors. A long list of building block functions can be defined and 2920 assembly language code written for each one, possibly using the interactive Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler. The system is then implemented by combining the building blocks as required. This is directly analogous with the normal design procedure of specifying a detailed block diagram of the desired system and then designing each block to specifications individually before combining them into the total system.

Building block functions can be lumped into general functions such as filtering, waveform generation, or non-linear functions. Table 4-1 indicates the number of instructions and RAM locations needed for some typical functions.

This table may be used to do a rough estimate of program length needed for a given application by assigning the required number of instructions to each block of the system block diagram. Once the program complexity has been estimated, the range of sample rates can be determined along with the corresponding signal bandwidth. Ideally, the signal bandwidth could be half the sample rate. When practical considerations such as anti-aliasing and reconstruction filter complexity are taken into account, signal bandwidths on the order of one third or one fourth the sampling rate are typical.

Table 4-2 gives the sample rate and corresponding maximum signal bandwidth as a function of program size. To better appreciate the complexity of a system that can be implemented with a given size program, three examples are given in Table 4-3 which are representative of a wide variety of possible applications.

### 4.1 Arithmetic Building Blocks

Among the simplest and most essential routines to be used in building more complex functions are multiplication and division, both by constants and by variables. This section describes such routines.

#### 4.1.1 Elementary Arithmetic

The basic arithmetic instructions of the 2920 allow addition of one variable to another, subtraction of one

variable from another, or replacement of one variable by another in a single instruction, for example in assembly language:

```
ADD X, Y;
```

adds the value associated with the RAM location labelled X to the value in the RAM location labelled Y. No scaler code was specified; the default condition is equivalent to R00.

Similarly, the value to be added or subtracted can be scaled by a power of two in a single instruction: e.g.,

```
SUB Y, X, R02;
```

causes one fourth of the value associated with X to be subtracted from the variable Y. The equivalent FORTRAN language statements for the operations above would be:

```
Y = Y + X  
Y = Y - (.25 * X)
```

respectively.

In general, the instruction set of the 2920 makes it quite easy to implement the equivalent of the FORTRAN statement:

```
Y = Y + (C * X)
```

where C is an arbitrary constant.

The last statement includes the equivalent of multiplication of X by an arbitrary constant. The next section describes some general rules for performing this basic operation.

#### 4.1.2 Multiplication by a Constant

The number of 2920 steps required to perform an operation of the type

```
Y = Y + (C * X)
```

is determined by the value and accuracy of the constant C.

Any value C can be expressed as sums and differences of positive and negative powers of two. Once a constant C is expressed in this way, the equivalent to  $Y = Y + (C * X)$  can be easily converted to 2920 code.

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

**Table 4-1. 2920 Implementation Of Basic Functions**

| Function  | # Instructions (Typical) | # RAM Locations | Comment                                  |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------|--|
| 4 Quadrant Multiply                                 | 12                       | 2               | 9 Bit X 25 Bit                           |
| 4 Quadrant Divide                                   | 14                       | 3               | 25 Bit ÷ 9 Bit                           |
| Filter Quadratic Function                           | 7 - 12                   | 2               | A Complex Pole<br>or<br>Complex Zero     |
| Sawtooth Wave Generator                             | 3 - 7                    | 2               | 9 Bit Amp Accuracy<br>> 16 Bit Freq. Acc |
| Triangle Wave Generator                             | 5 - 9                    | 2               | Same as Above                            |
| Limiter   | 1                        | 1               | Ideal Limiter                            |
| Full Wave Rectifier and Single Pole Low Pass Filter | 2 - 4                    | 1               |  |
| Threshold Detector                                  | 2 - 4                    | 2               |  |

**Table 4-2. Bandwidth vs. Program Length**

| Program Length |     | Sample Rate* | Signal 3 dB Bandwidth** |
|----------------|-----|--------------|-------------------------|
| Inst           | %   |              |                         |
| 192            | 100 | 13 KHz       | 4.33 KHz                |
| 154            | 80  | 16 KHz       | 5.33 KHz                |
| 115            | 60  | 22 KHz       | 7.33 KHz                |
| 77             | 40  | 32 KHz       | 10.7 KHz                |
| 39             | 20  | 65 KHz       | 21.7 KHz                |

\*Assumes 10 MHz Clock Rate. Sample Rate =  $\frac{1}{(\# \text{ inst})(400 \times 10^{-9})}$  Hz

\*\* Assume  $BW_{3 \text{ dB}} \approx \frac{1}{3}$  (Sample Rate)

Consider a value of C = 1.875. This value could be expressed several ways. For example:

$$1.875 = 1.0 + 0.5 + 0.25 + 0.125 = 2^0 + 2^{-1} + 2^{-2} + 2^{-3}$$

or:

$$1.875 = 2.0 - .125 = 2^1 - 2^{-3}$$

The first expression could be easily derived from the binary representation of 1.875 (in binary: 1.111). However, the second expression uses fewer terms, which will result in the use of fewer 2920 EPROM words.

**Table 4-3. Sample Applications**

| # Inst's | Application   | # RAM Locations |
|----------|---|-----------------|
| 192      | 1200 BPS Full Duplex Modem With Xmit & Receive Filters And Line Equalization  | 38              |
| 155      | Scanning Spectrum Analyzer With Input Frequency Range From 200 Hz to 3.2 KHz With 100 Hz Resolution, 48dB Dynamic Range | 23              |
| 115      | Approximately 22 Poles/Zeros Of Digital Filtering   | 24              |

Using the second form, a FORTRAN-like expression for Y becomes

$$Y = Y + (2^1 * X) - (2^{-3} * X)$$

which could be written as two sequential FORTRAN-like statements:

$$Y = Y + (2^1 * X)$$

$$Y = Y - (2^{-3} * X)$$

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

These statements may be directly converted to 2920 code:

```
ADD Y, X, L01;
SUB Y, X, R03;
```

The sequence of operations can sometimes be found by inspecting a binary representation of the constant C. For example, consider  $C = 1.88184 = 1.111\ 0000\ 111$  in binary. C might be represented by

$$C = 2^0 + 2^{-1} + 2^{-2} + 2^{-3} + 2^{-8} + 2^{-9} + 2^{-10}$$

which would take 7 steps, or more simply

$$C = 2^1 - 2^{-3} + 2^{-7} - 2^{-10}$$

which takes only 4 steps, i.e., 2920 code for  $Y = Y + 1.88184 * X$  is:

```
ADD Y, X, L01;
SUB Y, X, R03;
ADD Y, X, R07;
SUB Y, X, R10;
```

## An Algorithm for Multiplication by a Constant—

The section above noted that multiplications by constants can be converted to a sequence of 2920 instructions. In general, such sequences are always shorter (use fewer 2920 resources) than if a more general multiplication by a variable procedure were used. Variable multiplications are described in a subsequent section.

As was shown in the previous section, the constant should be expressed as a set of sums and differences of powers of two. The expression may be derived using the following algorithm:

- 1) Let C be the value desired for the constant. Let V represent an estimated expression for C. V will be initially set to zero.
- 2) Define an error  $E = C - V$ . This error represents the difference between the desired value and the current estimate.
- 3) Choose a term T whose magnitude is a power of two, such that  $|T - E|$  is minimized. Therefore T will have the same polarity as E, and will have a magnitude which is closest to that of E. (For example, if E were -0.65, T would have the value -0.5.) Let  $V = V + T$ .

- 4) Return to step 2 above with the new value of V, and recompute the error E. If the error E is small enough, the value V is used as equivalent to C. If not, step 3 must be repeated. Because V is expressed as a series of sums and differences of powers of two (the term T) it can be used to generate the desired 2920 code.

The algorithm above may be easily computerized. The following example demonstrates the procedure.

Let  $C = -0.65$ , which must be realized with a tolerance of  $\pm 0.01$ . The steps of the algorithm are as follows:

Initially:  $V_0 = 0, E_0 = -0.65$

$$\text{Step 1: } T_1 = -2^{-1} = -0.5, \quad V_1 = -0.5 \quad E_1 = -0.150$$

$$\text{Step 2: } T_2 = -2^{-3} = -0.125, \quad V_2 = -0.625 \quad E_2 = -0.025$$

$$\text{Step 3: } T_3 = -2^{-5} = -0.03125, \quad V_3 = -0.65625 \quad E_3 = +0.00625$$

At step 3, the error value has fallen within the specified bounds, and V may be expressed as  $V = -2^{-1} - 2^{-3} - 2^{-5}$ . Therefore,  $Y = Y + C * X$  may be approximated by the following 2920 code:

```
SUB Y, X, R01;
SUB Y, X, R03;
SUB Y, X, R05;
```

## Multiplication by a Constant of the Form $Y = C * X$

The section above described methods for computing  $Y = Y + C * X$ . If the form  $Y = C * X$  is desired, either Y may be initialized to zero, or the first step of a 2920 code sequence may substitute an LDA for an ADD operation.

### 4.1.3 Multiplication by a Variable

Multiplication of one variable by another can be accomplished using the conditional ADD instruction. Instruction sequences equivalent to the FORTRAN statements

$$Z = X * Y$$

$$\text{or } Z = Z + X * Y$$

$$\text{or } Z = Z + X * Y * 2^n$$

may be derived, where X and Y are variables, and if used, n is a fixed constant integer. Multiplication is easiest if one of the variables, let us say X, is limited to 9 bits of precision.

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

Consider  $Z = X * Y$ , where  $X$  is the multiplier,  $Y$  is the multiplicand, and  $Z$  the product. As several steps are required to perform the multiply, the intermediate values of  $Y$  are known as partial products.

The basic procedure consists of loading the multiplier  $X$  to the DAR, and then conditionally adding the suitably shifted multiplicand  $Y$  to the partial product  $Z$ , based on tests of bits in the DAR. Consider multiplying the binary values  $0.1011 \times 0.1101$ , where  $0.1011$  is the multiplier and  $0.1101$  the multiplicand. The sequence is as follows:

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| 0.00000    | partial product initialized to zero         |
| 0.01101    | multiplicand x 1st multiplier bit           |
| 0.01101    | first partial product = $0.1 \times 0.1101$ |
| 0.00000    | multiplicand x 2nd multiplier bit           |
| 0.01101    | 2nd partial product = $0.10 \times 0.1101$  |
| 0.0001101  | multiplicand x 3rd multiplier bit           |
| 0.1000001  | 3rd partial product = $0.101 \times 0.1101$ |
| 0.00001101 | multiplicand x 4th multiplier bit           |
| 0.10001111 | final product = $0.1011 \times 0.1101$      |

**Implementation of a 4 Quadrant Multiplier**—A four-quadrant multiply is needed when both variables can take on positive and negative values. One example of such a requirement is a mixer which multiplies two signals. A microprocessor implementation of this multiply might use a shift and add algorithm to determine the magnitude of the product and separate logic to determine the sign. A more direct algorithm is used in the 2920 to avoid the necessity of dealing with the sign bit separately since bit manipulation is comparatively inefficient in the 2920.

**Number Representation**—It is convenient to form a representation of a number in two's complement notation since this notation is hardware efficient and is used in the 2920. Assume that  $X$  is the multiplier number (sign and magnitude) and  $Y$  is the multiplicand. We can represent  $X$  in two's complement as

$$X = (-1)^s + s \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i} + s \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i} + s 2^{-n}$$

$$= s \left[ -1 + \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i} + 2^{-n} \right] + s \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i}$$

where  $s$  is the sign bit; 0 is positive, 1 is negative  
 $b_i$  is the weighting and is either 1 or 0

This can be rewritten as

$$x = -s + X$$

$$X = \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i} + 2^{-n} \quad \text{for } X < 0 \quad s=1$$

$$X = \sum_{i=0}^n b_i 2^{-i} \quad \text{for } X \geq 0 \quad s=0$$

**Product Implementation**—The product,  $Z = X * Y$ , can now be determined as follows:

Let  $X = -s + x$   
 $Y = -t + y$

Where  $s$  = sign bit of  $X$   
 $t$  = sign bit of  $Y$   
 $x$  = magnitude of  $\overline{X}$   
 $y$  = magnitude of  $Y$

Then  $Z = X * Y$   
 $= (-s+x)(-t+y)$   
 $= st + xy - sy - tx$

Now the 2920 can easily implement the product of a positive multiplier and a bipolar multiplicand using a simple shift and conditional add algorithm. The add is conditioned on the value of the multiplier bit located in the DAR.

If the sign bit is ignored in the multiplier,  $X$ , the resulting product will be

$$Z' = x(-t+y)$$

$$= xy - tx$$

This expression lacks the terms

$$st - sy = s(-Y)$$

Which can be added to form the entire product  $Z = Z' + s(-Y)$  by performing a conditional add of  $-Y$  based on the value of "s".

**Assembly Code**— The resulting 2920 Assembly code is shown in Figure 4-1 along with comments.

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

| OP  | Dest | Source | SHF | CND   | Comments  |
|-----|------|--------|-----|-------|---|
| LDA | DAR  | X      | R00 | ---   | SET UP DAR FOR CONDITIONAL ADD'S, X IS MULTIPLIER   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R01 | CND 7 |   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R02 | CND 6 |   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R03 | CND 5 | MULTIPLY Y BY THE MAGNITUDE OF X, THAT IS $x$ WHERE |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R04 | CND 4 |   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R05 | CND 3 | $Z = x(-t+y)$                                       |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R06 | CND 2 |   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R07 | CND 1 |   |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R08 | CND 0 |   |
| SUB | Y    | Y      | L01 | ---   | DEVELOPE - Y<br>$Y - 2Y = -Y$                       |
| ADD | Z    | Y      | R00 | CNDS  | CONDITIONAL ADD OF "-Y" IF SIGN OF X IS NEGATIVE    |
| SUB | Y    | Y      | L01 | ---   | RESTORES ORIGINAL SIGN OF Y IF NEEDED               |

**Figure 4-1. 4 Quadrant Multiply In 2920 Code**

### 4.1.4 Division by a Variable

Division of a variable by a constant may be performed by multiplying the variable by a value equal to the inverse of the constant. However, to divide a variable by another variable uses the conditional subtract. The basic algorithm is intended for division of positive numbers by positive numbers. If negative variables are to be used, the sign of the quotient may be computed using XOR and the absolute magnitudes of the variables are used.

The sequence consists of conditionally subtracting the divisor from the dividend, with the quotient being assembled in the DAR. The sequence is started with an unconditional subtraction which should be scaled to produce a negative result.

Consider dividing 0.100 by 0.111

|      |                 |                                     |
|------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
|      | 0.100000        |                                     |
|      | <u>-0.111</u>   | initial subtract                    |
| CY=0 | 1.1010000       | first carry, partial remainder      |
|      | <u>+0.111</u>   | 1st conditional subtract (does add) |
| CY=1 | 0.00010000      |                                     |
|      | <u>-0.00111</u> |                                     |

|      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
| CY=0 | 1.11011           |
|      | <u>+0.000111</u>  |
| CY=0 | 1.111101          |
|      | <u>+0.0000111</u> |
| CY=1 | 0.0000001         |
|      | <u>-0.0000111</u> |
| CY=0 | 1.11110101        |

The quotient so far = 0.10010

The full sequence for a four quadrant divide ( $Y=X/W$ ) becomes as follows:

|     |      |      |      |      |
|-----|------|------|------|------|
| LDA | TMP, | W,   | R13  |      |
| XOR | TMP, | X,   | R13  |      |
| ABS | X,   | X,   | R00  |      |
| ABS | W,   | W,   | R00  |      |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R00  |      |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R01, | CND7 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R02, | CND6 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R03, | CND5 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R04, | CND4 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R05, | CND3 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R06, | CND2 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R07, | CND1 |
| SUB | X,   | W,   | R08, | CND0 |
| XOR | DAR, | TMP, | R13  |      |

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

Note that the first two and last operations are used to save and restore the sign of the result. The quotient is available in the DAR.

If greater precision is needed, the contents of the DAR before quotient sign restoration can be saved, the DAR cleared, and conditional subtractions continued. However, before the conditional subtractions can be continued, the carry value must be restored. (The carry should always be equal to the complement of the sign of the partial remainder.) Restoration of carry may be accomplished by adding and then subtracting the divisor (appropriately shifted) from the partial remainder.

## 4.2 Realizing Relaxation Oscillators

There are several ways that oscillators may be realized with the 2920. One method utilizes a simple relaxation technique to implement a sawtooth waveform generator. The sawtooth waveform may then be altered using piece-wise linear transformations. Another method consists of implementing an unstable second order filter, which is described in a subsequent section.

### 4.2.1 Reset Technique For Relaxation Oscillator

A simple sawtooth oscillator can be implemented as follows: Once each sample period, subtract a positive value  $K1$  from a register. If the result of the subtraction becomes less than zero add a second positive value  $K2$  to the register.  $K2$  must be greater than  $K1$ .

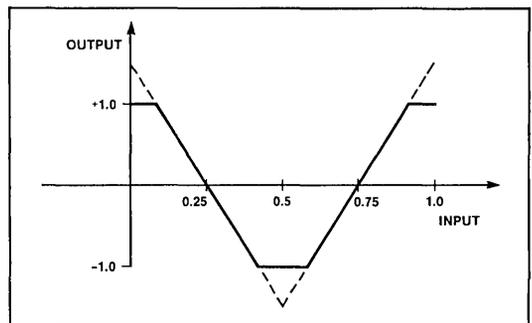
The oscillator generates samples of a negative sloped sawtooth waveform which has a frequency of  $(K1/K2) f_s$  where  $f_s$  is the sample rate. The amplitude ranges between  $K2$  and 0. The values for  $K1$  and  $K2$  may be constants or variables. If the value of the step size constant  $K1$  is a function of another waveform or external voltage, a frequency modulation or voltage controlled oscillator results.

The output of the oscillator corresponds to a sequence of samples of a sawtooth waveform. If a different waveform is desired, either filtering or waveform modification is necessary. Caution must be exercised when linear filtering is used since the samples of a sawtooth represent samples of a signal that is not band limited. Therefore, the higher harmonics of the original sawtooth may beat with harmonics of the sampling frequency to produce spurious frequency components. If the bandwidth of the waveform modifying filter is too

wide, some spurious components could pass through producing the equivalent of a small amplitude modulation on the output. Very narrow-band waveform modifying filters may be difficult to realize, and may produce additional problems if the oscillator is frequency or phase modulated.

A non-linear transformation of the oscillator output can modify the samples so that they correspond to samples of a more band-limited signal, even when the oscillator is being used in a variable frequency mode. The most effective band limiting transformation is one that converts the sawtooth waveform to a sine wave.

Although the 2920 cannot exactly realize a sine wave transformation, it can execute a piecewise linear approximation of arbitrary accuracy. Figure 4-2 shows a transformation for use with a relaxation oscillator with  $K2 = +1.0$ .



**Figure 4-2. Transformation for Conversion of Sawtooth Waveform to Clipped Triangle**

The transformation shown in Figure 4-2 can be realized using a combination of overflow-saturation and absolute magnitude functions. (Note that, in Figure 4-2, if the function represented by the dotted portion is realized, overflow saturation will convert the waveform to the solid line version.)

The parameters of the transformation can have a marked effect on the harmonic content of the waveform. The transformation of Figure 4-2 cancels all even harmonics with ratio of the amplitude of the  $n$ th odd harmonic to the fundamental being given by the relationships:

$$p(n) = \frac{\sin(n\pi/3)}{n^2\pi/3}$$

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

Therefore, the third harmonic is absent, the fifth is down 28db, the seventh is down 34db, etc. This represents a much lower harmonic content than the original sawtooth which contains all harmonics in a ratio  $p(n) = \frac{1}{n}$ .

The 2920 code for this transformation is given below. The oscillator, represented by the variable name OSC, is assumed to be a sawtooth between +1.0 and 0. The comments indicate the steps the waveform transformation takes. Note the use of a constant KP4 to readjust DC levels.

```
LDA Y OSC R00 ;Sawtooth + 1.0 to 0
SUB Y KP4 R00 ;Sawtooth + 0.5 to -0.5
ABS Y Y L01 ;Triangle 0 to 1.0
SUB Y KP4 R00 ;Triangle -0.5 to 0.5
ADD Y Y L01 ;Clipped Triangle
```

Example—A program for an oscillator which generates the clipped triangle wave approximation to a sine wave for a frequency of 1070Hz = 0.1%. Assume a sample interval of 76.8μsec.

The value for K1 may be found by solving the oscillator frequency equation above.

$$K1 = \frac{f}{f_s} * K2$$

In binary, for 1070Hz ± 1.07 Hz and K2 = 1.0,

$$.0001010100000100 \leq K1 \leq .0001010100001110$$

A value of  $K1 = .0001010100001 = 2^{-4} + 2^{-6} + 2^{-8} + 2^{-13}$  corresponds to 1069.7Hz. The program for the oscillator then becomes as follows:

```
SUB OSC, KP5, R03
SUB OSC, KP4, R07
SUB OSC, KP4, R12
LDA DAR, OSC, R00
ADD OSC, KP4, L01, CNDS ;conditional ADD K2
```

Note the use of the 2920 constants to generate the desired values for K1, and K2, and the use of the conditional ADD to perform the K2 addition, which resets the oscillator. This code may be followed by that realizing the waveform modification of Figure 4.2 to complete the generation of the clipped triangle output.

## 4.2.2 Overflow Technique for Relaxation Oscillator

It is possible to generate a sawtooth waveform using the overflow disable operations described in Table 3-4c. In some cases this technique may yield a shorter overall program length. The technique involves using the “wraparound” characteristics of a non-overflow corrected 2’s complement number system; that is, if you add 1 to the most positive number, the result will be the most negative number. In its simplest form, a sawtooth or “ramp” may be developed using the following 2920 code:

```
ABA OSC KP4 R07 CND(K)
```

where the ABA with CND(K) instruction disables overflow correction and the non-CND(K) part increments the value OSC by a constant ( $2^{-8}$  in this example).

## 4.3 Voltage Controlled Oscillators (VCO’s)

The basic relaxation oscillator described above may be frequency modulated or voltage controlled by replacing K1 with a suitably weighted variable from the controlling voltage or modulating signal.

If the variable V represents the instantaneous value of the modulating signal and a frequency relationship of the form  $F = f_0 + AV$  is desired, then the algorithm for the oscillator becomes as follows:

- 1) At each sample period, subtract the value  $(f_0 + AV) K2 / f_s$  from the oscillator register.
- 2) If the register contents become negative, add K2 to the oscillator.

The value  $(f_0 + AV) K2 / f_s$  can be separated into constant and variable terms.

$$\text{constant term} = f_0 K2 / f_s$$

$$\text{variable term} = AV * K2 / f_s$$

Because 2920 realizations of VCO’s are sampled, the usual considerations for alias distortion must be made. The output of the VCO will represent a sampled version of the corresponding continuous signal. Because frequency modulation can produce fairly wide side bands (in addition to those due to waveform), this side band energy is a potential source of alias distortion if it has

significant components above half the sample rate. For this reason, the maximum frequency excursion of the VCO should be kept well below half the sample rate.

## 4.4 Oscillators Based On Unstable Second-Order Sections

A second order filter with poles on the imaginary axis of the  $s$ -plane (unit circle of the  $z$ -plane) is predicted to act as an oscillator with a stable sine-wave output. A stage of this type may be used as the basis of a sine-wave oscillator. However, the amplitude of the oscillation is determined by the initial values in the filter, and the slightest deviation of the pole locations can cause the amplitude to grow or decay.

One approach to this type of oscillator is to place the poles so that the oscillation grows slowly with time, with overflow saturation limiting the growth. Many simple LC oscillators operate in this mode. The technique is also applicable to the 2920, but the user must be aware of the differences between continuous (analog) and discrete (digital) oscillators. The continuous oscillator starts because small amounts of noise provide an initial excitation of the unstable pole pair. For example, if the second order section initially has  $Y1 = Y2 = 0$ , the stage will provide zero output rather than oscillations, unless it is excited by some external input.

To prevent such a degenerate solution, it may be necessary to measure the oscillator amplitude, and “strike” the oscillator to start it. The amplitude measure may be obtained by low-pass filtering the rectified output, with striking being accomplished by making  $X = 0$  if and only if the amplitude exceeds some minimum value.

The equations for an oscillator are similar to those of a second order filter. If the oscillator frequency and growth should be of the form

$$A \cdot e^{at} \sin(bt)$$

where  $b = 2\pi f_0$  and  $f_0$  is the desired oscillator frequency, then the coefficients should be (for sample interval  $T$ ):

$$B_1 = 2e^{-aT} \cos bt$$

$$B_2 = -e^{-2aT}$$

Note that the magnitude of  $B_2$  is now slightly greater than one. The size of “ $a$ ” determines the rate at which oscillations grow in amplitude. Larger values cause

faster starting, but at the expense of frequency accuracy. In addition, overflow saturation may produce undesirable effects on oscillator behavior. Each time saturation is entered the oscillator behaves as if a small quantity was added to  $Y_0$ . Such a change corresponds to a change in both amplitude and phase. The amplitude change may introduce undesired harmonic content and the phase change may result in a change of frequency, so that the oscillator runs at a somewhat different rate than initially predicted.

A second, somewhat related effect is that of locking to sample rate. Because any finite digital system has a finite number of states, eventually an oscillator must repeat states. Once a state has repeated, the entire sequence of output samples then repeats indefinitely. When a particular state is periodically forced by the occurrences of overflow saturation, the length of the repetition period may be shortened considerably, with the effect that the oscillator frequency  $f_{osc}$ , takes the form:  $f_{osc} = (K1/K2)f_s$ . In the equation,  $K2$  represents the number of samples in one repetition, and  $K1$  represents the number of cycles of the oscillator in that period. The sample rate is designated  $f_s$ . The harder the oscillator “hits the stops”, i.e., the larger the value of “ $a$ ”, the shorter the repeat cycle will be. Actual evaluation of repeat cycle length, etc., is probably best achieved by computer simulation.

## 4.5 Gain Controlled Oscillator

The oscillator described above is equivalent to a continuous positive feedback oscillator, in which oscillations grow until the loop gain is reduced by amplifier saturation. Another type of continuous oscillator uses gain control to determine oscillator amplitude. An early realization of a gain controlled continuous oscillator used an incandescent lamp in the positive feedback loop. A rising amplitude heated the lamp filament, raising its resistance and reducing the oscillator’s positive feedback.

An equivalent oscillator realized with the 2920 will consist of an amplitude measurement, with the value of “ $a$ ” (in the equations for  $B_1$  and  $B_2$ ) being a function of the amplitude. A positive “ $a$ ” causes the oscillation amplitude to rise, while a negative value produces a falling amplitude.

Normally both  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  must be varied, but it is possible to limit the variation to  $B_2$  if a small frequency variation is tolerable. In this mode  $B_1$  is fixed at a value

# BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

nominally equal to  $2 \cdot \cos(bT)$ . When the amplitude is below the desired value,  $B_2$  is set to equal to  $-(1+E)$  where  $E$  is a small positive number. Otherwise  $B_2 = -(1-E)$ . The oscillator operates alternately at the frequencies  $f_0 + \Delta f$  and  $f_0 - \Delta f$ , where  $f_0 = b/2\pi$  and  $\Delta f = E/(4\pi T \cdot \tan(bT))$ . If more precise frequency control is needed,  $B_1$  may also be adjusted whenever  $B_2$  is modified.

## 4.6 Realization Of Non-Linear Functions

There are five sources of non-linear operations in the 2920: absolute magnitude (ABS), signum or limit (LIM), conditional arithmetic, logical operations, and overflow.

Non-linear operations may be used to simulate analog non-linearities using piecewise linear approximations, and may also be used for relaxation oscillators, modulators, automatic gain control, etc.

The range of possible non-linear functions is very broad, but a number of examples are given below to illustrate the capabilities of the 2920.

Note: One caution must be observed when implementing non-linear functions in a sampled system such as the 2920. Because non-linear functions may produce signals rich in harmonics, the output samples of a signal produced by a non-linear function may be equivalent to samples of a non band-limited signal. Some of the harmonics may beat with the sample frequency to produce unexpected alias distortion components. Even though input and output of both the sampled system and its analog counterpart may be band-limited, there may be differences between them when non-linear functions are simulated.

### 4.6.1 Simulation of Rectifiers

The absolute magnitude function,  $Y = |X|$ , can be realized with a single 2920 instruction (ABS). This function behaves as an idealized full-wave rectifier. The add absolute function (ABA) is useful for combining full-wave rectification with input to a filter.

Half-wave rectifiers can be realized using the equation  $y = (x + |x|) / 2$ . The corresponding 2920 code for this operation is as follows:

```
LDA Y, X, R01; Y = X/2
ABA Y, X, R01; Y = X/2 + ABS(X)/2
```

Other rectification characteristics may be simulated using piecewise linear approximations or multiplication and/or division.

### 4.6.2 Simulation of Limiters

Limiters may be realized in three ways using the 2920; via the LIM function, via overflow, or by calculations using absolute magnitudes (ABS, ABA operations).

The LIM function produces an ideal threshold logic element. Even the smallest signal forces a full positive or negative output.

In some systems, signals below some level should not be allowed to excite limiting. These systems require a transfer characteristic similar to that shown in Figure 4-3, where signals with amplitude below the threshold "a" do not produce full scale output. This type of limiter characteristic can be realized using overflow saturation or with the use of absolute magnitude functions.

To use overflow saturation to implement such a limiter, the value  $X$  is loaded to  $Y$  with a left shift code, after which  $Y$  may be loaded or added to itself with additional left shifts. Consider the sequence below:

```
LDA Y, X, L02; Y = 4*X
ADD Y, X, L02; Y = 5*4*X = 20*X
```

The effect is to generate a value of  $Y$  which is 20 times  $X$ . If  $X$  exceeds a value of 0.05,  $Y$  will be held to +1.0, or if  $X \leq -0.05$ ,  $Y$  will take the value -1. Thus the characteristic realized is that of figure 4-3 with  $a = 0.05$ , and  $L = 1.0$ .

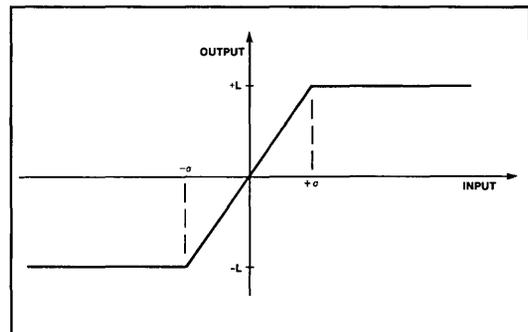


Figure 4-3. Limiter Transfer Characteristic

## BUILDING BLOCK FUNCTIONS—FOUNDATION OF DESIGN

---

Another realization can be based on the equation

$$y = |x-a| - |x+a|$$

which realizes the same shape curve as that of Figure 4-3, with a value of  $L = 2a$ . This form generally takes more steps than the overflow saturation method, but allows greater freedom in setting parameters. The 2920 code might appear as follows, where A represents the limiter threshold, and T is a location used only for intermediate calculations:

```
LDA T, X, R00;
SUB T, A, R00; X-A in T
ABS Y, T, R00; Y = ABS(X-A)
ADD T, A, L01; X+A in T
ABS T, T, R00; ABS(X+A) in T
SUB Y, T, R00; Y = ABS(X-A) - ABS(X+A)
```





# CHAPTER 5 SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

## 5.0 SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

This section presents a general review of different filter types and discusses their characteristic weak and strong points. It then presents a comparative analysis which aids in the selection of a filter for implementation and testing.

$$h(t) = \frac{KV}{\pi} \left\{ \text{Si} \left[ (B)(t-t_0 + \frac{\tau}{2}) \right] - \text{Si} \left[ (B)(t-t_0 - \frac{\tau}{2}) \right] \right\}$$

where  $h(t)$  is the output pulse response

$$\text{Si}(x) = \int_0^x \frac{\sin y}{y} dy$$

- K is the filter passband gain
- V is the input pulse amplitude
- $\tau$  is the pulse width
- B is the filter bandwidth

## 5.1 Characteristics Of "Ideal" Filters

It is useful to examine the characteristics of transmission lines and the so-called "ideal" filter as an introduction to typical filter characteristics.

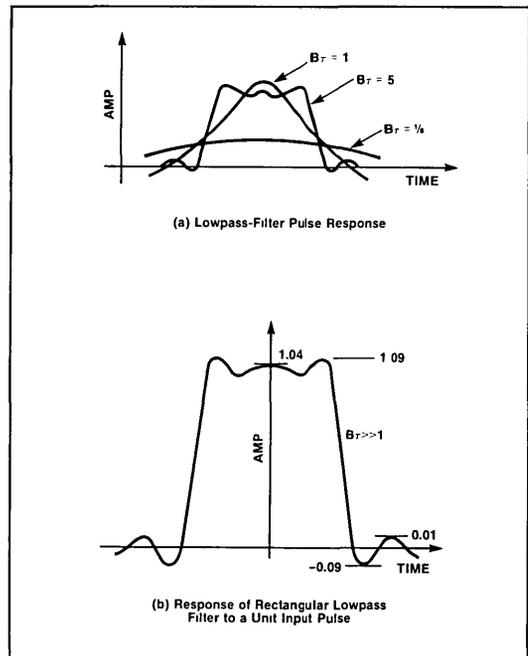
Distortionless transmission implies that a signal is transmitted through a network or medium and is received exactly as sent but delayed by some amount. A Fourier Analysis of the required transfer function shows that it must have a constant amplitude over all frequencies and a linear phase shift with frequency. An example of a distortionless system is a length of transmission line with a phase slope proportional to its length. Any amplitude shaping as a function of frequency will introduce some measure of distortion to the signal. The problem then is to achieve the required frequency selectivity while minimizing the distortion of the signal.

### 5.1.1 The Rectangular Filter

An ideal filter can be defined as follows for purposes of analysis: it has a linear phase characteristic and a band-limited amplitude response, i.e., unity in the passband and zero in the stopband. This filter provides the asymptotic limit in filter selectivity with a minimum of distortion. Realizable filters can approach this selectivity by increasing the number of poles or stopband zeros in their transmission function. Phase linearity must be maintained either by employing direct linear phase synthesis techniques or by using phase equalizers to linearize the phase characteristic of the filter.

It is of interest to study the pulse transient response of the rectangular filter as a limiting case of high selectivity filter development. The pulse response can be calculated as a function of pulse width and filter bandwidth using Fourier Analysis techniques. The following equation is derived for the output response:

Figure 5-1 illustrates the pulse response as a function of the  $\tau B$  product.



**Figure 5-1. Rectangular Filter Pulse Response**

As the pulse-duration bandwidth product approaches infinity, the output pulse shape approaches that of the input pulse in rise time and amplitude. One important difference is that overshoot and ringing on the output pulse does not diminish in amplitude as the bandwidth of the filter is increased toward infinity. Instead, overshoot approaches 9% of the steady-state pulse height, and settling time approaches zero as bandwidth approaches infinity. This characteristic is referred to as

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

---

the Gibbs phenomenon, and is explained mathematically by the fact that the Fourier Series expansion of a function fails to converge uniformly at discontinuities. This point is significant because it shows that the transient response of a filter is closely related to the selectivity of the filter, and that phase linearization will not eliminate overshoot and ringing.

### 5.2 Minimum Phase Filters

A minimum phase filter is defined as a filter whose transfer function has all poles in the left plane and no zeros in the right half plane of the complex frequency  $s$ -plane. When a function is minimum phase, its phase response is uniquely related to its amplitude response, i.e., an amplitude specification uniquely defines the phase characteristic of the filter. This attribute makes it possible to categorize filter design parameters for a limited selection of amplitude and phase characteristics. These filters are the ones most often taken from design tables (“cookbook filter design”) and include Butterworth, Chebyshev, Bessel, Transitional Bessel/Butterworth, Equal Ripple Phase, Elliptic Function, and other less well-known designs. Each of these filters provides unique characteristics which makes it a valuable contribution to filter design. The “best” filter from this group depends on the application: in some cases a number of them may be satisfactory, while in others none will suffice. The following sections describe the basic characteristics of these filters from an applications viewpoint.

#### 5.2.1 Butterworth Filters

Butterworth filters are also called “maximally flat amplitude” filters because they are specifically designed to have monotonically flat amplitude response, with a nearly zero slope over the majority of the passband. Outside the passband these filters exhibit good selectivity, with the amplitude rolloff approaching 6dB/octave-bandwidth per pole and an ultimate rejection approaching infinity as the frequency moves away from the passband.

The pulse response of these filters is characterized by high overshoot and significant ringing. The overshoot increases monotonically with the number of poles, and the duration of the ringing is inversely proportional to the filter bandwidth (as it is in all minimum phase filters.) The poor pulse response is caused by both the high selectivity and the nonlinear phase characteristics of the filters.

Typical applications of this type of filter include signal rejection, frequency domain shaping of a spectrum, or other amplitude response applications where the phase distortion of the signal is not important (e.g., filtering a fixed tuned linear oscillator.)

#### 5.2.2 Chebyshev Filters

These filters are also called “equal ripple amplitude” filters because the passband gain is defined within specific limits, between which the gain varies in a sinusoidal manner. The number of amplitude ripples is related to the number of poles in the transfer function. The amount of ripple is determined by specifying the transfer function with typical values of 0.01 to 0.5 dB. The attenuation outside the passband increases monotonically towards infinity. For an equal number of poles, the Chebyshev filter has a higher rate of rolloff in the vicinity of the passband cutoff frequency than the Butterworth filter. This rolloff eventually approaches a 6 dB/octave-bandwidth per pole rate.

The pulse response exhibits only slightly greater overshoot than the Butterworth, but considerably more ringing. The amount of ringing is proportional to the amplitude ripple magnitude. The phase response also has a ripple component roughly proportional to the amplitude ripple. One would properly suspect that this filter introduces more distortion into a signal which occupies the entire filter bandwidth. It can be shown that over restricted portions of the passband, the combined phase linearity and amplitude distortion effects may be less for Chebyshev than for Butterworth and Bessel filters.

The Chebyshev filter is usually used in applications where a high selectivity, high ultimate rejection, and low complexity are desired.

#### 5.2.3 Elliptic Function Filters

The highest selectivity minimum phase filters are elliptic function filters, characterized by equal ripple amplitude in the passband and the stopband. The design parameters are the amount of ripple in the passband, the minimum attenuation in the stopband, and the transition region width from passband to stopband. These filters use zeros in the stopband to achieve exceptional selectivity, but have a finite ultimate attenuation equal to the minimum attenuation. In some applications this finite rejection can be a problem for interference which is not sufficiently attenuated in the stop band.

# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

The pulse response of the elliptic function filter is approximately the same as for Chebyshev filters, and possibly even better for the same selectivity. The phase and time delay characteristics are sufficiently bad that this type of filter is seldom used where signal distortion is a strong consideration.

## 5.2.4 Bessel and Gaussian Filters

These filters are nearly identical to each other in both time and frequency domains. The Bessel is also known as the Thompson and the maximally flat time delay filter. Unlike the high selectivity filters described above, these filters are primarily designed for linear phase and good transient response. Their selectivity is roughly comparable to a single stage RC section within the first 6 dB regardless of the number of poles. Well outside their passband the rolloff approaches 6 dB/octave-bandwidth per pole.

The pulse response is characterized by a fast rise time and little or no overshoot regardless of the number of poles. One application of this filter is as a matched filter to receive pulse signals in a noisy but otherwise interference-free environment.

## 5.2.5 Transitional Gaussian/Butterworth Filters

This useful filter provides the skirt selectivity of a Butterworth but the passband characteristics of a Gaussian filter. The transitional point is established by varying a parameter in the transfer function, transition points values of 6 dB or 12 dB being common. This means that the filter exhibits a Gaussian amplitude response down to the transition amplitude, and then assumes a Butterworth amplitude response. The filter has good phase linearity in the passband, though not as good as a conventional Gaussian filter, and a transient response which has substantially reduced overshoot compared to a Butterworth.

## 5.2.6 Other Minimum Phase Filters

Many other transfer functions can be described, such as equal ripple phase, parabolic, monotonic L, etc. Their characteristics are combinations of those already described. The important aspect of minimum phase filters is the unique relationship between amplitude and phase. The transient response is affected by both parameters, so that flexibility is limited with respect to simultaneously achieving good selectivity and low distortion.

## 5.2.7 Comparison of Minimum Phase Filters

Lowpass prototype filters have been discussed which meet various magnitude or phase requirements. For minimum phase networks, the specification of one parameter (magnitude or phase) necessarily constrains the other. Thus, both amplitude and phase cannot be specified independently.

Filters synthesized for specific amplitude properties include Butterworth (maximally flat amplitude), Chebyshev (equal ripple passband amplitude), and elliptic function (equal ripple amplitude passband and stopband). Optimal phase filters include Bessel (maximally flat phase), equal ripple time delay (equal ripple phase error), and transitional (compromised amplitude and phase). Some of these filter types and the corresponding properties are listed in Table 5-1. A comparison can be made in both the time domain and frequency domain to illustrate the different properties.

**Table 5-1. Summary of Analog Filter Types**

- Butterworth “maximally flat amplitude”
  - Flat in passband
  - Monotonic in stopband to zero gain at  $\infty$  Hz
  - High selectivity
  - High overshoot transient response
- Chebyshev “equal ripple amplitude”
  - Small ripples in passband
  - Monotonic in stopband to zero gain at  $\infty$  Hz
  - Higher selectivity
  - Higher overshoot transient response
- Elliptic or cauer “equal ripple amplitude”
  - Ripples in passband
  - Ripples in stopband to  $A_{\min}$
  - Highest selectivity
  - Highest overshoot transient response
- Bessel “maximally flat delay”
  - Monotonic amplitude in passband and stopband
  - Poor selectivity
  - Nearly linear phase and flat time delay
  - Zero overshoot transient response
- Allpass
  - Flat amplitude (constant gain)
  - Used to equalize phase or delay characteristics of networks

# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

## 5.3 Non-Minimum Phase And Allpass Networks

An allpass filter can be defined as one whose transfer function has all its zeros in the right half plane and all its poles in the left half plane as images of the zeros. Allpass functions have unit amplitude for all real frequencies and, for all positive frequencies, a negative phase. Any non-minimum phase function can be written as the product of a minimum phase function and an allpass network.

The use of an allpass network with a minimum phase network (such as those described above) enables the filter designer to realize simultaneously both the amplitude and phase characteristics desired (at least on paper). This allpass filter is being used as a phase equalizer. In general, it takes one zero-pole allpass network for each pole of a minimum phase filter to achieve a significant improvement in phase linearity (assuming a high selectivity filter such as a Chebyshev). This rule of thumb hints at the substantial complexity that can result from the phase equalization of multi-pole minimum phase network.

Direct synthesis techniques can be used to design networks which meet both amplitude and phase constraints simultaneously. The situation is nevertheless unfavorable because substantial design effort and complexity are involved.

## 5.4 Review of Analog Filter Characteristics

### 5.4.1 Effect of Pole/Zero Locations on Filter Parameters

Relative comparisons of filter types can be made for filters having the same number of elements (poles) and the same 3 dB bandwidth. The relative pole-zero locations for various 4-pole lowpass filters are illustrated in Figure 5-2.

For filters of the same type having a different number of poles, the pole locations will fall on the same contours as the 4-pole case and the filter will have the same general characteristics.

It can be seen that filters optimized for a particular amplitude characteristic have pole locations inside the circle passing through the cutoff frequency; similarly,

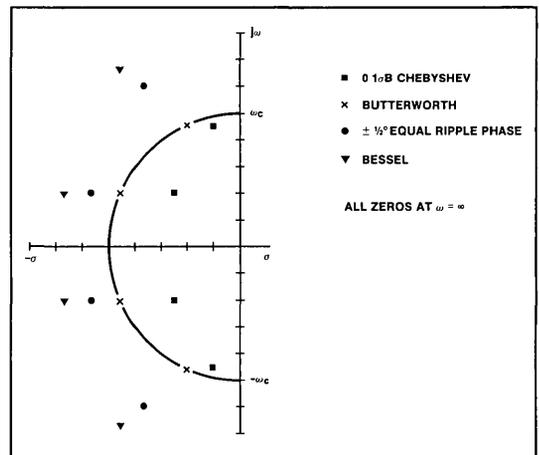


Figure 5-2. Pole-Zero Locations Of 4-Pole Lowpass Prototype Filters

filters optimized for linear-phase properties have pole locations outside this circle. The amplitude, phase, and time delay characteristics corresponding to common prototype filters are illustrated in Figure 5-3. The correspondence of good amplitude characteristics and pole locations near the  $j\omega$  axis, or of good phase characteristics and pole locations away from the  $j\omega$  axis, is observable. Signal distortion results if changes in amplitude or phase occur at frequencies within the signal spectrum. A measure of the degree of distortion can be obtained by observing the step and impulse responses of the system, as illustrated in Figure 5-3 for the 4-pole low-pass prototype filters. The degree of signal distortion can be determined qualitatively by observing the rise time, overshoot, and settling time of the filter step response. Figure 5-4 indicates that approximately the same percentage overshoot of the step response is achieved for the Butterworth and Chebyshev filters; the deviation from linearity of the phase response across the 3 dB bandwidth is also approximately equal. Figure 5-3, however, shows that the time-delay characteristic differs by as much as 2:1. Phase linearity, therefore, provides a better measure of signal distortion than the time-delay variation across the pass-band. This is illustrated by noting the step response and time-delay characteristic of a linear-phase filter that has fine-grain variations. Because deviations from linearity are infinitesimal, the step response is virtually unchanged. However, the time delay can have extremely large variations simply by increasing the slope of the fine-grain phase variations.

# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

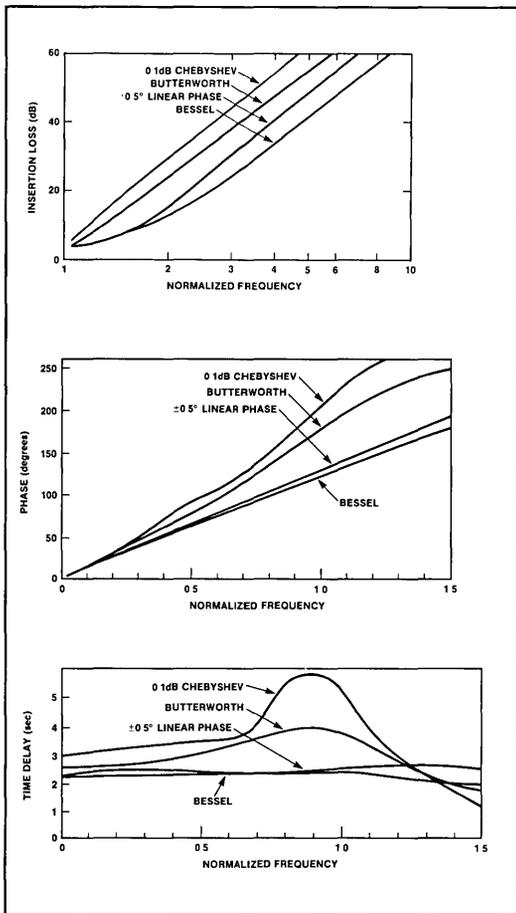


Figure 5-3. Amplitude, Phase, And Time-Delay Characteristics Of Lowpass Prototype Filters

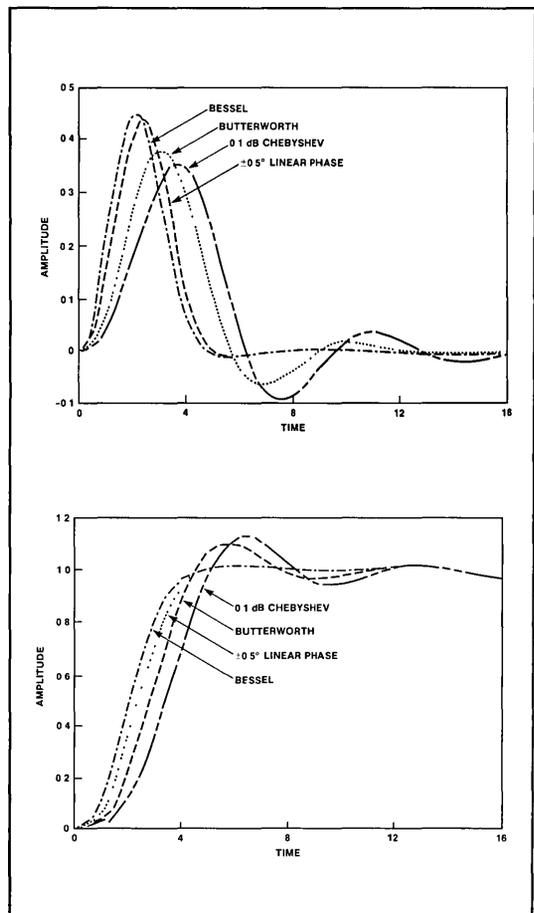


Figure 5-4. Impulse And Step Response Of Lowpass Prototype Filters

## 5.4.2 Transient Response and Selectivity

Because the use of allpass networks allows the synthesis of a phase characteristic independent of the amplitude response, it is of interest to know how phase linearization of standard minimum phase filters affects their transient response. A study of the step response of such synchronously tuned filter stages as the passive RC networks indicates that the rise time of the filter decreases (i.e., responds faster), when its phase characteristic is linearized. The step response of a single-pole network is illustrated in Figure 5-5. Because the rise time of cascaded filter sections is approximately equal to the

square root of the sum of the squares of the individual stage rise times, the results for a single stage can be extended to multiple stages.

An interesting result of the analysis of such filter characteristics as selectivity and overshoot appears when percent overshoot (in response to a step input) is plotted as a function of filter selectivity. Two separate curves arise which are related to the phase characteristics of the filters. Linear or nearly linear phase

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

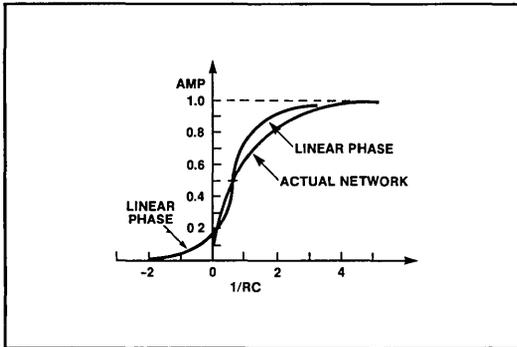


Figure 5-5. Step Response of RC Network: Actual And Linear Phase

filters (e.g., allpass) have approximately 9% less overshoot than other minimum phase filters such as the Butterworth.

This difference in overshoot is nearly independent of the selectivity ratio, as shown in Figure 5-6. One consideration in realizing filters is complexity, i.e., nearly-linear phase filters are significantly more complex for a given selectivity ratio than are the Chebyshev and Butterworth filters. The transitional filter shown in the figure is indeed making a transition from linear phase for a small number of poles, to a characteristic more nearly similar to the Butterworth filters.

The effect of phase linearization on Chebyshev and Butterworth filters was determined by computer calculation of the pulse response (either RF or video) of any arbitrary selection of cascaded Chebyshev, Butterworth, Bessel,  $\sin(x)/x$ , or allpass networks, using a number of filter characteristics and permitting the phase linearization of any of these filters by simply setting their phase shifts to zero, independent of frequency.

Figure 5-6 shows the result for both 3- and 5-pole Butterworth and Chebyshev (0.5 dB ripple) filters. An average of 5% reduction overshoot was obtained by phase linearization of both the Butterworth and Chebyshev filters. Note that as the number of poles increases for the phase-linearized filters, the overshoot approaches 9%. This result would be expected from the analysis of the rectangular filter, whose linear phase and rectangular amplitude response represent the limiting case as the number of poles goes to infinity for phase-linearized filters.

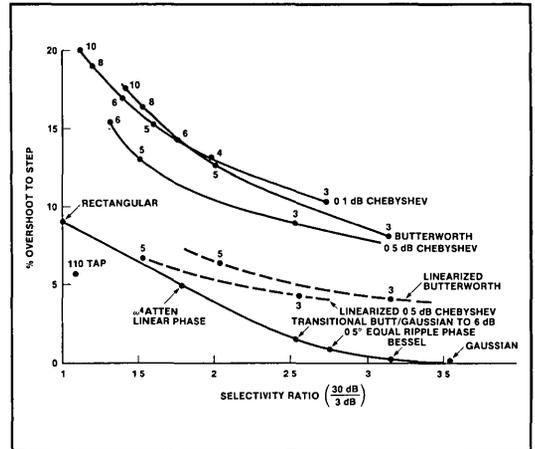


Figure 5-6. Overshoot vs. Selectivity Ratio

### 5.5 Digital Filters

A band-limited signal can be sampled, processed, and reconstructed with no loss of information due to the sampling process. As long as the signal is maintained in a band-limited form, it is possible to perform arithmetic operations on samples of the signal yielding results equivalent to arithmetic operations performed on the continuous signal.

The processed samples may then be used to reconstruct the equivalent modified continuous signal. As long as the operations performed are linear, i.e.,

$$F(x+y) = F(x) + F(y); \text{ where } F \text{ is the operation}$$

then a band-limited signal will retain its band-limited nature throughout the processing. Digital filtering consists of processing digitized samples of signals in a manner similar to the methods for realizing continuous analog filters.

Two classes of digital filters are defined: non-recursive filters, where the output is a function of only the previous and present inputs, and recursive filters, where by using feedback, the output is a function of past and present inputs and outputs. The non-recursive filter generates a finite impulse response and is therefore called an FIR filter. Recursive filters, because of the feedback, have infinite impulse responses and are referred to as IIR filters.

# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

## 5.5.1 IIR Filters

The traditional approach to the design of IIR digital filters involves transforming an analog filter into a digital filter that meets prescribed specifications. This is a reasonable approach because

- 1) The art of analog filter design is highly advanced. Since useful results can be achieved, established analog design procedures present advantages.
- 2) Many useful analog design methods have relatively simple closed-form design formulas, greatly facilitating the implementation of the corresponding digital filters.
- 3) In many applications it is of interest to use a digital filter to simulate the performance of an analog linear time-invariant filter.

The conversion of an analog filter into a digital filter is accomplished in a number of ways: impulse invariance, direct transformation using  $s$ - to  $z$ -plane transforms, conversion of differential equations to difference equations, and direct synthesis techniques. Some of these are discussed in the next section. In each approach, known analog filter characteristics in the frequency domain are converted to similar characteristics in the  $z$ -plane of the digital filter. Table 5-2 lists some of the direct transforms which are used.

**Table 5-2. Direct Transforms**

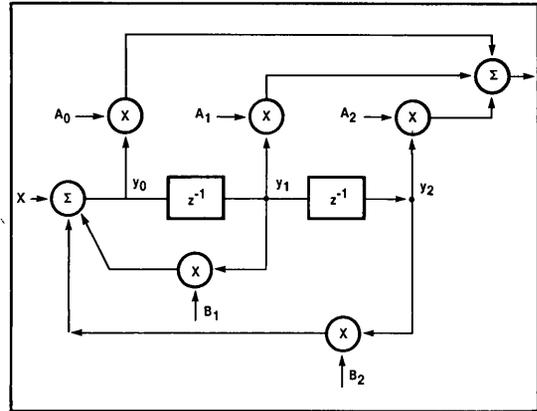
|                    |
|--------------------|
| Matched Z          |
| Left Integration   |
| Trapezoidal        |
| Bilinear           |
| Prewarped Bilinear |

Each of these techniques introduces a nonlinearity into the resulting amplitude and phase characteristics of the original analog filter. Phase equalizers may be designed to linearize the phase characteristic of the transformed digital filter.

## 5.5.2 FIR Digital Filters

Finite impulse response filters offer several advantages. Some of these advantages are:

- 1) FIR filters can be designed to have exactly linear phase. Linear phase filters are important for applications such as speech processing and data transmission, where phase distortion is harmful.



**Figure 5-7. Digital Filter Module (Second Order Section)**

- 2) FIR filters which are realized using a non-recursive structure are always stable.
- 3) Roundoff noise, inherent in any realization using finite precision arithmetic, can easily be made small for the non-recursive FIR filters.
- 4) Adaptive filters are more easily realized using FIR techniques.

One disadvantage of FIR filters is that a large number of delay elements are needed to obtain a sharp cutoff, thereby requiring a large amount of processing. Thus a limited resource like the 2920 signal processor can achieve more filter complexity using IIR approaches.

The characteristic of interest is the ideally linear phase which can be achieved with the FIR filter. The desired amplitude characteristic can be achieved with arbitrary accuracy by increasing the degree of the filter without affecting the phase.

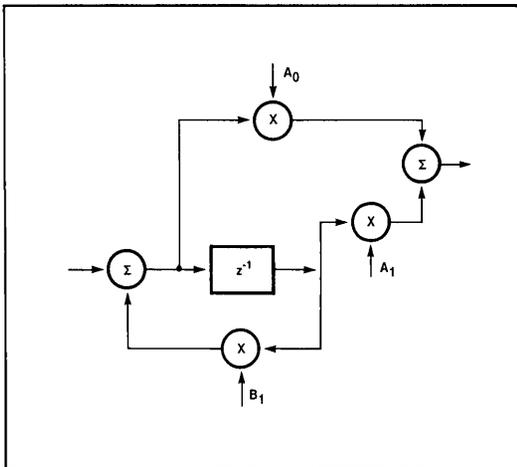
## 5.5.3 Canonical Forms Of Digital Filters

Figure 5-7 is a block diagram of a digital filter module. Each block labeled  $z^{-1}$  is a unit delay, i.e., a delay of one inter-sample interval. The other blocks are multipliers (X) and adders (Σ). The values  $A_0, A_1, A_2, B_1,$  and  $B_2$  are coefficients which determine the behavior of the module.

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

The stage shown in Figure 5-7 behaves in a manner analogous to a continuous analog stage which realizes a complex conjugate pair of poles and zeroes. For example, if the structure initially has values  $Y_1$  and  $Y_2$  equal to zero and is excited by a single impulse (i.e., one sample of unit value followed by zero-valued samples), the output may take the form of samples of an exponentially decaying sinusoid. The impulse response of the stage may be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 h(0) &= D+A \\
 h(iT) &= e^{-\alpha iT} A \cos(\beta iT) + B \sin(\beta iT) \text{ for } i > 0 \\
 \text{when } B_1 &= 2e^{-\alpha T} \cos \beta T \\
 B_2 &= -e^{-2\alpha T} \\
 A_0 &= D+A \\
 A_1 &= -(2D+A)e^{-\alpha T} \cos \beta T + Be^{-\alpha T} \sin \beta T \\
 A_2 &= De^{-2\alpha T} \\
 \alpha &= \text{real part of pole} \\
 \beta &= \text{imaginary part of pole} \\
 T &= \text{sample period} \\
 i &= \text{ith sample}
 \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 5-8. Digital Filter Module  
(First Order Section)**

The diagram of Figure 5-8 corresponds to a stage realizing a single real pole. Its impulse response takes the form:

$$\begin{aligned}
 h(0) &= D+A \\
 h(iT) &= Ae^{-\alpha iT} \\
 \text{when } B_1 &= e^{-\alpha T} \\
 A_0 &= D+A \\
 A_1 &= -De^{-\alpha T}
 \end{aligned}$$

From the equations, it can be seen the impulse responses consist of (optional) initial delta functions, followed by a series of samples which are equivalent to having sampled an exponential decay, or an exponentially decaying sinusoid.

Therefore, if we have a *continuous* filter F1 that has an impulse response which consists of a sum of decaying exponentials or exponentially decaying sinuoids, we can realize a *digital* filter F2 that has an impulse response whose values at each sample time are identical to those we would expect from F1. This impulse response may be achieved by building a network of the structures shown in Figure 5-7 and 5-8, and summing their outputs.

This procedure defines a type of transform from the continuous domain to the sampled domain, that is, the sampled domain structure implements an impulse response equivalent to having sampled the impulse response of the corresponding continuous filter. This transform is known as the "impulse invariant" transform, and is one of several which may be used to relate the sampled world and the continuous world.

Because of the nature of the sampling process and the corresponding frequency folding about the sample rate, it is not possible for a digital filter to duplicate exactly the characteristics of a continuous analog filter. As the frequencies of interest approach and exceed half the sample rate, the frequency characteristics of the digital filter differ radically from those of its continuous counterpart. These differences may be shown by solving for the frequency response of the second order digital filter section as shown below:

$$F(j\omega) = \frac{A_0 + A_1 (\cos \omega T - j \sin \omega T) + A_2 (\cos 2\omega T - j \sin 2\omega T)}{1 - B_1 (\cos \omega T - j \sin \omega T) - B_2 (\cos 2\omega T - j \sin 2\omega T)}$$

Note that a periodic function of frequency results, unlike the continuous case.

Sampled systems can be described as functions of a complex variable  $z$ , where  $z = e^{sT}$ ,  $T$  is the sample period, and  $s$  is the Laplace complex frequency. In Figure 5-7, each of the blocks labeled  $z^{-1}$  corresponds to a unit delay

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

of time  $T$ . It is possible to describe the characteristics of the block diagram of Figure 5-7 as a ratio of polynomials in  $z$  or  $z^{-1}$ .

Consider the case of a continuous analog filter where one stage realizes a single exponentially decaying sinusoid. Just as such a structure corresponds to a single pair of complex conjugate poles, the diagram shown in Figure 5-8 is capable of realizing a single exponentially decaying sinusoid and corresponds to a single complex conjugate pair of poles in the complex  $z$  plane. Figure 5-9 shows a plot of the frequency response of the typical second order continuous section, and, for comparison, that of a second order sampled section, for the case where the impulse invariant transform described above was used.

### 5.5.4 Matched Z Transform

Another method for converting from the  $s$ -plane to the  $z$ -plane is known as the matched  $z$  transform. This method is simply a technique for mapping each pole or zero of the  $s$ -plane to a corresponding pole or zero in the  $z$ -plane. A pole or zero at  $a+jb$  on the  $s$  plane is transferred to a pole or zero at  $e^{(a+jb)T}$  on the  $z$ -plane, where  $T$  represents the sample interval in seconds. In polar coordinates, this  $z$ -plane location is  $(e^{aT}, bT)$ . The equations for the filter coefficients are shown below:

Second order sections for a continuous pole pair  $-a \pm jb$  in the  $s$ -plane.

$$B_1 = 2e^{-aT} \cos bT$$

$$B_2 = -e^{-2aT}$$

for a continuous zero pair at  $-a \pm jb$

$$A_1 = 2A_0 e^{-aT} \cos bT$$

$$A_2 = A_0 e^{-2aT}$$

First order section

for a real pole at  $-a$

$$B_1 = e^{-aT}$$

for a real zero at  $-a$

$$A_1 = -A_0 e^{-aT}$$

This transform is not guaranteed equivalence in either frequency or time domains, although pole positions correspond to the impulse invariant transform. The transform is sometimes useful for conceptually estimating the influence, on the resulting filter characteristic, of moving the poles or zeros. In general, it is easier to predict the impact on frequency response of moving a pole or zero in the  $s$ -plane than in the  $z$ -plane, because the  $s$ -plane axes are more directly related to frequency.

The matched  $z$  transform allows a one-to-one correspondence of poles and zeros in the  $s$ -plane to poles and zeros in the  $z$ -plane. One use of this transform is therefore to aid manipulation of the positions of poles and zeros in the  $z$ -plane in order to achieve some desired frequency response.

Rather than attempt to do the complete design on the  $s$ -plane and then transform to the  $z$ -plane to achieve the desired filter, the designer manipulates the poles and

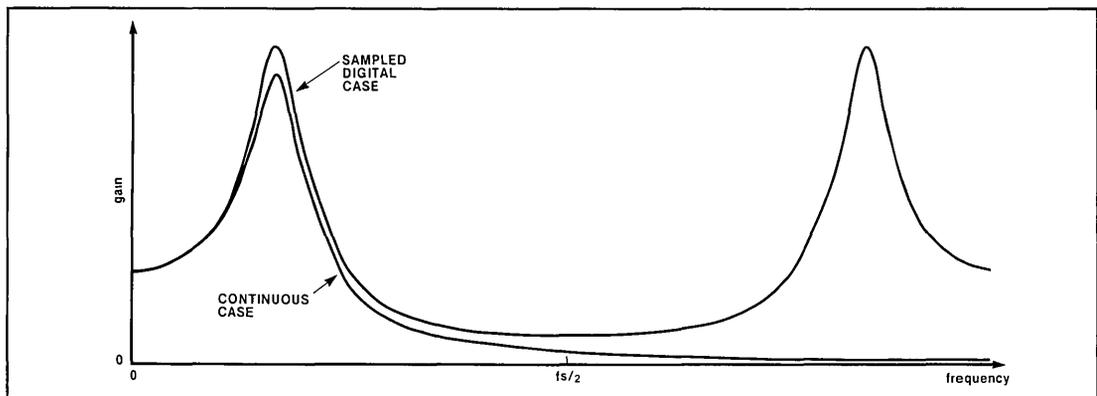


Figure 5-9. Comparison of Digital and Continuous Frequency Response

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

zeros in the s-plane while observing the frequency response of the digital filter resulting from the matched z transform. Once the desired characteristic is obtained, the coefficients of the filter are determined by using the transform. This technique has been implemented in the Signal Processor Applications Software/Compiler, and aids the empirical design of filters when mixtures of continuous and digital filters are used.

### 5.5.5 Bilinear Transform

This transform is a method for mapping the s-plane ( $j\omega$ ) frequency axis into the z-plane unit circle, such that the continuous s-plane frequency scale from DC to infinity is mapped into a corresponding frequency range of DC to one-half of the sample rate. Therefore, this transform distorts the frequency axis or the frequency characteristics of the filter.

However, the transform does have the property that the shape of the frequency characteristics of the analog filter is preserved with the exception of the frequency distortion. It is common to pre-distort the characteristics of a continuous filter to compensate for the transform's distortions, and thereby implement a sampled filter with a frequency response very closely resembling that of its continuous counterpart. The equations for the bilinear transform are shown below.

The equations for the Bilinear Transform are:

$$s \rightarrow \frac{2(1-Z^{-1})}{T(1+Z^{-1})}$$

where T is the sampling interval

$$Z \rightarrow \frac{(2/T + S)}{(2/T - S)}$$

That is, given a polynomial expression (in s) for the transfer characteristic of a continuous filter, a corresponding digital filter may be found by substituting.

$$\frac{2(1-Z^{-1})}{T(1+Z^{-1})}$$

for each occurrence of s, and then converting the resulting expression to a ratio of two polynomials in z.

These functions map the  $j\omega$  axis onto the unit circle of the z-plane, i.e., when

$$S = j\Omega$$

where  $\Omega$  is the analog frequency (in radians/sec)

$$Z = \frac{(2/T + j\Omega)}{(2/T - j\Omega)} \quad \text{or} \quad |Z| = 1$$

The Bilinear Transform maps the point

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega = 0 & \text{ to } Z = 1 \\ \Omega = \infty & \text{ to } Z = -1 \end{aligned}$$

and the entire left half plane into the unit circle.

A nonlinear distortion is produced by the mapping of the  $j\Omega$  axis onto the unit circle. This distortion is given by the mapping

$$\Omega = 2/T \tan WT/2 \quad W = \frac{2}{T} \tan^{-1}(\Omega T/2)$$

where  $\Omega$  is the analog frequency in radians/sec

As an example of using the Bilinear Transform, the design of a lowpass digital filter with a cutoff frequency of  $f_c$  may be performed in the following manner:

- 1) Convert  $f_c$  to radians/sec and find the proper prewarping for the equivalent analog filter:

$$\Omega_c = \frac{2}{T} \tan \frac{W_c T}{2} \quad W_c = 2\pi f_c$$

- 2) Design an analog filter that will satisfy the given specification with a lowpass cutoff frequency of  $\Omega_c$  in radians/sec or  $\Omega_c/2\pi$  Hz. Express the transfer function as a ratio of polynomials in s.

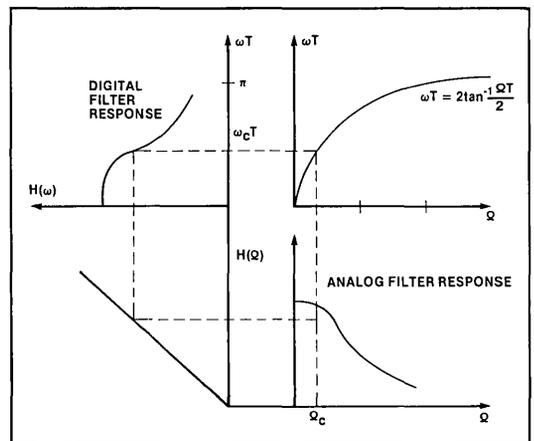


Figure 5-10. Transfer Function From  $\Omega$  to  $w$

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

- 3) Use the bilinear transform on the transfer function in  $s$  (obtained in step 2) to obtain a transfer function in  $z$ , i.e., replace each occurrence of  $s$  with

$$\frac{2(1-z^{-1})}{T(1+z^{-1})}$$

The digital filter which corresponds to the  $z$ -plane expression from step 3 (Figure 5-10) will now have the desired cutoff characteristic.

Note that this transform may alter the number of poles and zeros involved. If poles and zeros are independently transformed, redundant poles or zeros may occur. Using this transform requires careful elimination of such redundancies.

### 5.6 Implementing Filters with the 2920

Once you have determined the locations of your filter's poles and zeros in the  $z$ -plane, converting this structure into 2920 code is relatively straightforward. In the blocks of Figures 5-7 and 5-8, there are three basic operations performed to achieve digital filtering action: a unit delay, addition, and multiplication.

For time invariant filters, the multiplications performed for digital filters will be of some variable  $Y_i$  by a constant represented by the values  $A_0, A_1, A_2, B_1,$  or  $B_2$ . The goal of the 2920 programmer is to implement these functions with a minimum of 2920 instructions.

**Unit Delay**—The blocks labeled  $z^{-1}$  correspond to unit delays, i.e., delays of one sample interval. The sample interval is the time it takes for the 2920 to make one pass through its program. The value on the output side of a delay block represents the value computed at the block's input on the previous pass through the program.

The delay can be realized by a RAM location which retains the data from the previous pass until it is needed. A single LDA instruction of the 2920 is sufficient to implement a unit delay block. Figure 1 shows two delay blocks; thus two LDA instructions and two RAM locations are required. These instructions have the form shown below:

```
LDA Y2, Y1, R00
LDA Y1, Y0, R00
```

After executing these two instructions, the RAM location designated Y2 contains the value of Y1 from the previous pass, and Y1 contains the value of Y0 from the previous pass. To complete the filter realization, it is sufficient to complete the calculations of the new value of Y0 from the current values of input, Y1, and Y2, and then compute the output from Y0, Y1, and Y2. The new value of Y0 involves multiplication of Y1 and Y2 by the constants B1 and B2. The instruction set of the 2920 permits implementing these multiplications-by-constants as a series of addition and subtraction steps.

**Implementing Coefficients**—In general, the coefficients are not realized exactly, but rather are approximated as closely as necessary to meet the filter specifications. This permits minimizing the number of 2920 program steps required to realize the multiplications.

Each ADD or SUB instruction of the 2920 can be thought of as adding a value to (or subtracting it from) the destination operand (e.g., Y1 in the last instruction above). The value used in that operation is the product of some power of two and the source operand (e.g., Y0 in the last instruction above). There is a simple algorithm for converting a multiplication by a constant into a series of additions and subtractions. It consists of choosing, at each step, the particular power of two and the specific addition or subtraction operation which will minimize the error, i.e., produce the closest approximation to the desired value.

For example, consider the coefficient  $B_1 = 1.8$ . The power of two that would most closely approximate this value would be  $2^1$ , or 2. This value may be realized with a single 2920 instruction:

```
ADD Y0, Y1, L01
```

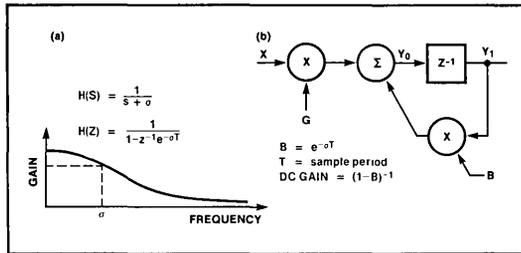
The error in realizing B1, after this step, would be  $2 - 1.8 = +0.2$ . If such an error is too large, another 2920 instruction step is added. To reduce an error of  $+0.2$ , the programmer subtracts the value  $2^{-2}$  or 0.25 from the approximation, giving a net approximation of 1.75 and an error of  $-0.05$ . If  $-0.05$  is still too large an error, an additional 2920 step equivalent to adding the source operand multiplied by  $2^{-4} = 0.0625$  can be added. A net approximation of 1.8125 results, with an error of  $+0.0125$ . This process can be repeated until the coefficient is realized with adequate accuracy for the filter requirements. Because there are two coefficients in the filter, two sequences of operations must be defined as

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

described above. As the procedure described performs an addition to the destination location, it is necessary to initialize the destination location. This can be done by clearing the location (e.g., by subtracting the location from itself) or by converting an addition operation to an LDA and placing it as the first step of the sequence. The last steps to realize the filter involve adding the weighted input variable and computing the output. Procedures similar to those above are used for the multiplications and additions needed for these operations.

### 5.6.1 Simulating Single Real Poles

Figure 5-11 shows a block diagram of a sampled 1 pole realization. The block labeled  $z^{-1}$  represents a unit delay, i.e., a delay equivalent to one sample interval or one 2920 program pass. The blocks labeled X represent multiplications, in each case by a constant.



**Figure 5-11. Implementation of Single Real Poles**

The FORTRAN statements to implement Figure 5-11b would be as follows:

```

Y1 = Y0
Y0 = B*Y1 + G*X
    
```

For the 2920, the FORTRAN statements would be converted to 2920 statements as shown in the section on arithmetic in Chapter 4. For example, suppose it had been determined that  $B = 0.9922$  ( $B = 0.11111110$  in binary) and  $G = 0.0078125$  ( $G = 0.0000010$  in binary). The 2920 instructions could then be generated, using the methods described previously as follows:

| OP  | Dest | Source | Shift | Comments          |
|-----|------|--------|-------|-------------------|
| LDA | Y1,  | Y0,    | R00   | ; propagation     |
| LDA | Y0,  | Y1,    | R00   | ; Y0 = 1.0*Y1     |
| SUB | Y0,  | Y1,    | R07   | ; Y0 = B*Y1       |
| ADD | Y0,  | X,     | R07   | ; Y0 = B*Y1 + G*X |

Note that the comments show how the new value of Y0 is being generated. However, in this case, the second instruction is superfluous, and could be omitted.

Much of the design of such a section consists of determining the best values for B and G that are consistent with meeting of design goals and also are easily realized in 2920 code. It is the function of the 2920 support software to aid in optimizing 2920 code subject to design bounds. The example given below is intended to illustrate the procedures involved.

**Design Example No. 1**—For a sample interval of 76.8  $\mu\text{sec.}$ , realize a single-pole filter with a time constant ( $1/\sigma$ ) of 1.50msec  $\pm 1\%$ , and DC gain of 1.00  $\pm 1\%$ .

The limits on B can be found from evaluating  $B = e^{-\sigma T}$  for the range  $1.485 \leq RC \leq 1.515$ , i.e.,  $0.94960 \leq B \leq 0.95057$ . Expressed in binary,  $0.1111001100011000 \leq B \leq 0.1111001101011000$ . The central value is  $B = 0.95009$  or  $0.1111001100111001$  in binary.

Any value in the specified range may be chosen to meet the design criterion. A value of  $B = 0.1111001101$  meets the design criterion and can be realized in five steps:  $B = 2^0 - 2^{-4} + 2^{-6} - 2^{-8} + 2^{-10}$ .

From the DC gain equation, note that  $G = (1-B) \pm 1\%$ . Given the value for B above, the range of acceptable values for G, expressed in binary is  $0.000011001010 < G < 0.000011001111$  with a target value of  $0.0000110011$ . The target value can be realized as easily as any of the others, in 4 steps. The value for G can be expressed as  $G = 2^{-4} - 2^{-6} + 2^{-8} - 2^{-10}$ .

With the two constants evaluated, they can be directly converted to 2920 assembly language instructions, as will be shown below.

Prior to evaluating the final 2920 code, it may be necessary to consider overflow possibilities. If the input values are suitably limited, overflow can be made impossible. In other cases, a proper sequence of instructions can at least limit overflow to the last instruction, so that saturation occurs only if the final value is too large. In the code generated below, terms have been ordered to prevent overflow from occurring on any but the last line.

The following sequence realizes the single pole section of Design Example No. 1. Comments are included to show the contribution of instruction sequences.

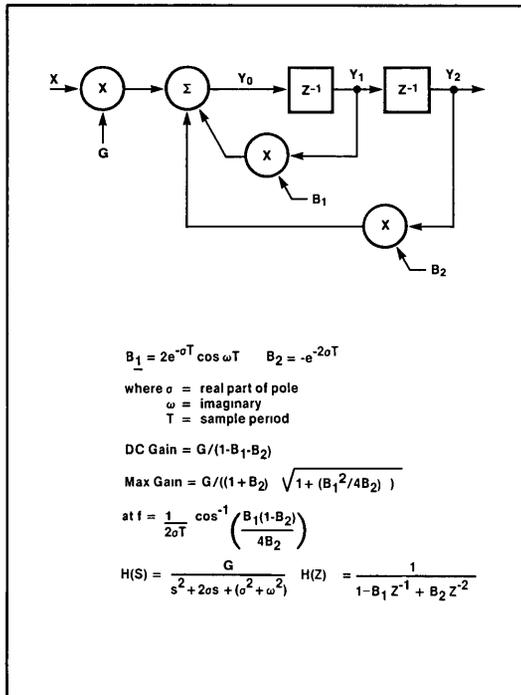
# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

## OP Dest Source Shift Comments

|     |     |     |     |                       |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------------|
| LDA | Y1, | Y0, | R00 | ; Y1 = Y0             |
| LDA | Y0, | X,  | R04 |                       |
| SUB | Y0, | X,  | R06 |                       |
| ADD | Y0, | X,  | R08 |                       |
| SUB | Y0, | X,  | R10 | ; Y0 = G*X            |
| SUB | Y0, | Y1, | R04 |                       |
| ADD | Y0, | Y1, | R06 |                       |
| SUB | Y0, | Y1, | R08 |                       |
| ADD | Y0, | Y1, | R10 | ; Y0 = G*X + (B-1)*Y1 |
| ADD | Y0, | Y1, | R00 |                       |

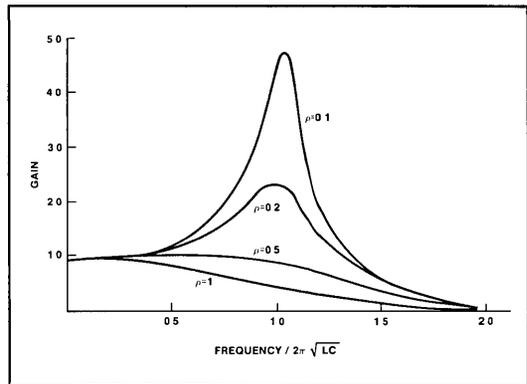
### 5.6.2 Simulating Complex Conjugate Pole Parts

Figure 5-12 shows a sampled realization of a complex pole pair with the 2920. Again the blocks labeled X are multipliers, those labeled  $z^{-1}$  are unit (one sample interval) delays, and the block labeled  $\Sigma$  is an adder. Coefficients  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  control the frequency parameters, and G adjusts the overall gain.



**Figure 5-12. Realization Of Complex Conjugate Pole Pair**

Figure 5-13 shows the frequency response of this type of stage. The choice of parameter values determine both the frequency at which the gain peaks, and the Q or sharpness of the peak.



**Figure 5-13. Gain Of Complex Conjugate Pole Pair Section**

The FORTRAN equations for a complex conjugate pole pair section are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y_2 &= Y_1 \\
 Y_1 &= Y_0 \\
 Y_0 &= B_1 * Y_1 + B_2 * Y_2 + G * X
 \end{aligned}$$

Once the coefficients of the third equation are found, the equations can be converted to 2920 code using the procedures described above. Thus the major portion of the design consists of finding values for the coefficients which meet the design requirements, yet take the minimum numbers of 2920 steps to realize. The procedures are shown in Design Example No. 2.

**Design Example No. 2.**—For a sample interval of 76.8  $\mu$ sec, realize a resonance at 1000 Hz  $\pm$  0.5% with a Q in the range  $75 \leq Q \leq 100$ . The peak gain should be  $1.0 \pm 10\%$ .

A complex conjugate pair of s plane poles at  $s = -\sigma \pm j\omega$  has an impulse response which rings at a frequency  $f = \omega / 2\pi$  and a value for Q given by  $Q = \frac{\omega}{2\sigma}$

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

Thus  $\omega T = 0.48255 \pm 0.0024$  and, at  $\omega T = 0.48255$ ,  $\sigma T$  falls in the range  $0.002412 \leq \sigma T \leq 0.003217$ . Expressing the negative of  $B_2$  (see Figure 5-12) in binary gives:

$$0.111111001011 \leq -B_2 \leq 0.111111101100$$

A value which falls in this range and can be expressed in only three powers of two is

$$-B_2 = 0.111111101 = 2^0 - 2^{-7} + 2^{-9} = 0.99414$$

Once  $B_2$  is established,  $B_1$  may be found, using the relationships  $e^{-\sigma T} = -B_2$  and  $B_1 = 2 e^{\sigma T} \cos(\omega T)$ . In binary  $1.1100010011 \leq B_1 \leq 1.1100001110$ . A suitable value for  $B_1$  is given by  $B_1 = 1.110001 = 2^1 - 2^{-2} + 2^{-6} = 1.7656$ .

To test the values of  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  chosen, the resonant frequency and  $Q$  may be calculated:

$$f_r = 1001.8, Q = 82.$$

Substituting in the equations for maximum gain gives  $f_m = 1001.8$ , and maximum gain  $G_m$  as follows:

$$G_m = \frac{G}{0.002724}$$

To obtain a maximum gain which is less than one, a value of  $G$  given by

$$G = 2^{-8} - 2^{-10} = 0.00293$$

is adequate.

The corresponding 2920 code can be written from the evaluations of the coefficients:

| OP  | Dest | Source | Shift | Comments                      |
|-----|------|--------|-------|-------------------------------|
| LDA | Y2,  | Y1,    | R00   | ; Y2 = Y1                     |
| LDA | Y1,  | Y0,    | R00   | ; Y1 = Y0                     |
| LDA | Y0,  | Y1,    | L01   |                               |
| SUB | Y0,  | Y1,    | R02   |                               |
| ADD | Y0,  | Y1,    | R06   | ; Y0 = B1*Y1                  |
| SUB | Y0,  | Y2,    | R00   |                               |
| ADD | Y0,  | Y2,    | R07   |                               |
| SUB | Y0,  | Y2,    | R09   | ; Y0 = B1*Y1 + B2*Y2          |
| ADD | Y0,  | X,     | R03   |                               |
| SUB | Y0,  | X,     | R10   | ; Y0 + B1*Y1<br>+ B2*Y2 + G*X |

The comments show how the values are built up from sequences of 2920 instructions by alternating ADD and SUB commands to maintain the smallest total and thus minimize the possibility of overflow.

### 5.6.3 Realizing Zeros in Basic Filter Sections

The building blocks described above realize only poles. To introduce zeros, additional elements may be added to the sections described above. The section itself will remain unchanged except for the additions of blocks which combine some of the "Y" values to generate new outputs.

To add a single (real) zero, the blocks shown in Figure 5-14 can be added.

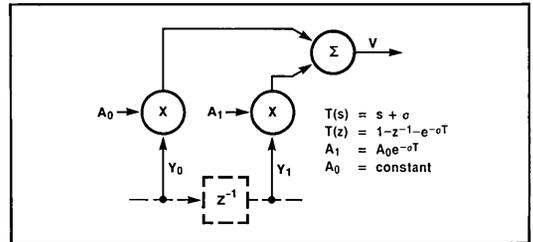


Figure 5-14. Realization Of A Single Real Zero

The FORTRAN equation of a zero realization is:

$$V = A_0 * Y_0 + A_1 * Y_1$$

To produce a zero equivalent to a continuous zero at  $s = -\sigma$ , the values for  $A_0$  and  $A_1$  must have the relationship

$$A_1 = A_0 (e^{\sigma T})$$

where the value for  $A_0$  is arbitrary. For a zero at DC,  $A_1 = A_0$ .

### 5.6.4. Complex Conjugate Zero Pairs

To realize complex conjugate pairs of zeros, the three values  $Y_0$ ,  $Y_1$ , and  $Y_2$  must be available. If not available as part of a basic complex conjugate pole stage, additional delay stages may be added. The

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

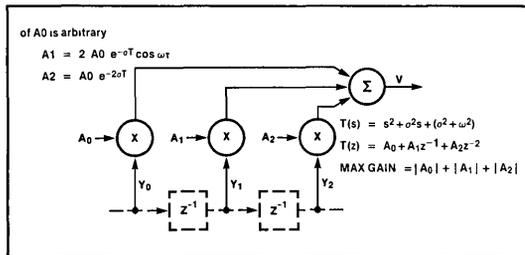
structure of Figure 5-15 realizes the equivalent of a complex conjugate pair of zeros at  $s = \sigma \pm j\omega$  via the (FORTRAN) equations

$$V(k) = A_0 \cdot Y_0 + A_1 \cdot Y_1 + A_1 \cdot Y_2$$

$A_0$ ,  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  must meet the following requirements (where the value of  $A_0$  is arbitrary):

$$A_1 = 2 \cdot A_0 \cdot e^{\sigma T} \cos \omega T$$

$$A_2 = A_0 \cdot e^{-2\sigma T}$$



**Figure 5-15. Realization of a Complex Conjugate Zero Pair**

$$T(s) = s^2 + a^2s + (a^2 + \omega^2)$$

$$T(z) = A_0 + A_1z^{-1} + A_2z^{-2}$$

$$\text{MAX GAIN} = |A_0| + |A_1| + |A_2|$$

### 5.6.5 Some Practical Considerations

The procedures described above show how second order filter sections can be realized. In selecting the gain for the filter, the user should consider the scaling of the variables within the filter. Improper scaling can result in a number of problems.

If the variables are very small, it is possible that the 25-bit word width will not provide enough resolution, and significant truncation noise will be introduced. Because a second order filter of this type may perform the equivalent of integrations in which results are obtained by summing many small values, roundoff error can occur in unexpected ways.

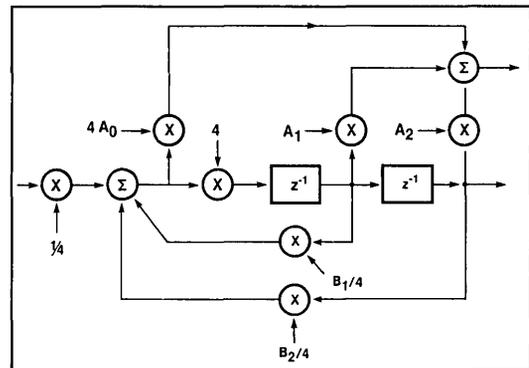
If the variables are scaled too large, overflow saturation may result, with behavior very similar to that occurring in an analog circuit when the signals exceed the dynamic

range of the amplifiers. However, an additional consideration may be important in 2920 realizations of second order sections. As coefficient products are developed by series of additions and subtractions, intermediate values may be larger than those finally obtained.

In general, it is necessary to provide sufficient margins when scaling input variables to ensure that overflow saturation does not occur for intermediate values. Sometimes the sequence of calculations can be ordered to minimize potential overflow saturation.

A third method to prevent intermediate overflow saturation is to compute some fraction of  $Y_0$ , restoring it to full value when it is transferred to  $Y_1$ , such as shown in Figure 5-16. This of course adds some noise to the final output, lowering the accuracy somewhat.

The coding generated by the Signal Processor Applications Software/Compiler is already ordered and scaled in this manner to minimize overflow.



**Figure 5-16. Method for Preventing Intermediate Overflow**

(If overflow occurs, it will be when  $Y_0$  is increased and loaded to  $Y_1$ .)

No additional instructions are necessary in general, because the extra multiplications shown in Figure 5-16 can be performed by modifying the instructions of the original realization.

When a filter consists of a cascade of second order sections, code can be saved by performing the gain adjustment calculations at just one point in the cascade. However, to maintain properly scaled variables, the

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

gain at each stage should be adjusted by the appropriate power of two. The proper scaling factor can be determined by evaluating the maximum gain from the input to each point in the cascade, starting with the first stage. The gain of that stage is adjusted to ensure that the gain does not exceed unity at any frequency. After each stage is adjusted, the process is repeated for the next stage.

### 5.6.6 Very Low Frequency Filters

As mentioned above, the processes occurring in the recursive second order section are equivalent to integration. When very low frequency filters or filters with very high Q's must be realized, even the 25-bit word width of the 2920 may not provide adequate protection from truncation error. In some cases it may be possible to reduce the clock rate (and therefore sample rate) which will reduce requirements for coefficient precision.

When other functions prevent reduction of the sample rate, or when the predicted value of clock rate must be lower than the minimum permitted for the 2920, alternate programming techniques must be used. (The 2920 word size and the dynamic range of the variables being processed establish a maximum ratio of sample rate to frequencies of interest.)

**Extended Precision Arithmetic**—For very low frequency filters, the effective sampling rate must be reduced or the effective precision of the processor must be increased. One approach, extended precision arithmetic, appears possible but cumbersome. When very low frequencies are being used, the coefficients  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  approach very closely the values  $+2$  and  $-1$  respectively. By realizing the filter as shown in Figure 5-11, the small terms  $B_1-2$  and  $B_2+1$  are isolated from the large terms and scaled upwards by some power of two. The equivalent multiplications may then be done using single precision, which is converted back to extended precision by a  $2^{-n}$  scaling.

Extended precision arithmetic may be executed using masks derived from the constants, or by conditional additions. In either case, carries generated by the low order word are added to the high order word to maintain carry propagation. The carries may be simulated in one of the high order bits of the low order word, tested via conditional operations or masking, and then removed by masking or conditional addition of a negative constant. Table 5-3 shows an extended precision add routine.

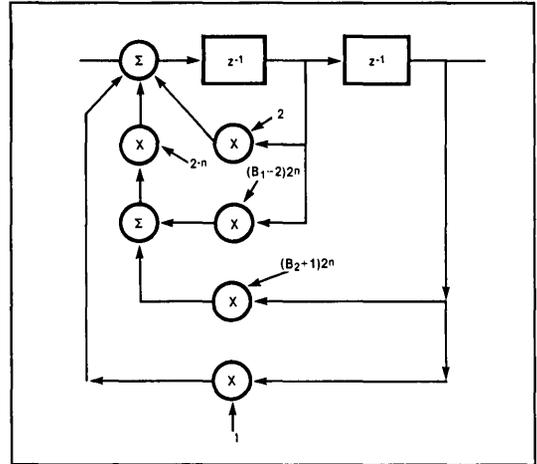


Figure 5-17. Very Low Frequency Filter

Table 5-3. Extended Precision Add Routine (48 Bit Precision) Technique Uses Simulated Carry at 2nd Bit From Left of Low Order Word.

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ADD YL, XL, R00   | ; add low order word (25 bits+carry) |
| LDA TMP, YL, R00  | ; copy word to temporary location    |
| AND TMP, KP4, R00 | ; mask off simulated carry bit       |
| SUB YL, TMP, R00  | ; clear carry from low order word    |
| ADD YH, XH, R00   | ; add high order words               |
| LDA TMP, TMP, R13 | ; move carry to right                |
| ADD YH, TMP, R10  | ; add carry to high order word       |

**Submultiple Sampling**—When low frequency filters must be realized, it is in general more convenient to reduce the sample rate rather than attempt to extend the precision of the variables. The sample rate may effectively be reduced by using the conditional load operation triggered by an oscillator run at a submultiple of the sample rate. The filter calculations go to completion every  $n$ th cycle. Such an oscillator can be realized by the program shown in Table 5-4.

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

**Table 5-4. Implementation of Submultiple Sampling**

|                         |                    |  |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--|
| ; Oscillator            | SUB OSC, KP1, R05, | ; subtract constant<br>; KP1 from OSC    |
| LDA DAR, OSC, R00,      |                    | ; move to DAR<br>; for sign test         |
| LDA OSC, KP3, R00, CNDS |                    | ; re-initialize if<br>; negative to      |
| ADD OSC, KP3, R05, CNDS |                    | ; 99 times KP1                           |
|                         |                    | ; conditional filter<br>; implementation |
| LDA Y2, Y1, R00, CNDS   |                    | ; delay occurs only<br>; on cycling      |
| LDA Y1, Y0, R00, CNDS   |                    | ; of oscillator                          |

; remainder of filter calculations are done uncondi-  
; tionally - result is valid only on cycling of oscillator

In the program (Table 5-4) a constant value is subtracted from a RAM location on each pass through the program. If (and only if) that operation causes the result to be negative, the condition for re-initializing the oscillator is met. A conditional LDA (as opposed to conditional ADD in section 4.2) operation restores the oscillator to a positive value. Thus the oscillator cycles at a submultiple of a sample rate (at 1/100 in Table 5-4 example.)

The filter itself is realized using the same equations as are used in any second order section, with the exception that the delay realization operations, i.e., loading Y1 to Y2 and Y0 and Y1, are performed only on those program passes which re-initialize the oscillator. Because the oscillator calculations only produce re-initialization every nth cycle, a sample rate has been achieved equal to the 2920 sample rate divided by n.

### 5.6.7 Filters at a Multiple of the Sampling Rate

On occasion, it may be desirable to implement filters at frequencies too high for the basic program sampling rate or to operate one or more stages of the filter at a higher sample rate than that of the 2920. For example, it may be possible to use a lower cost external anti-aliasing filter by sampling the inputs at a higher than normal rate, and performing some of the anti-aliasing using a

digital filter stage operating at this higher rate. Subsequent processing of the data is performed at the nominal rate of the 2920.

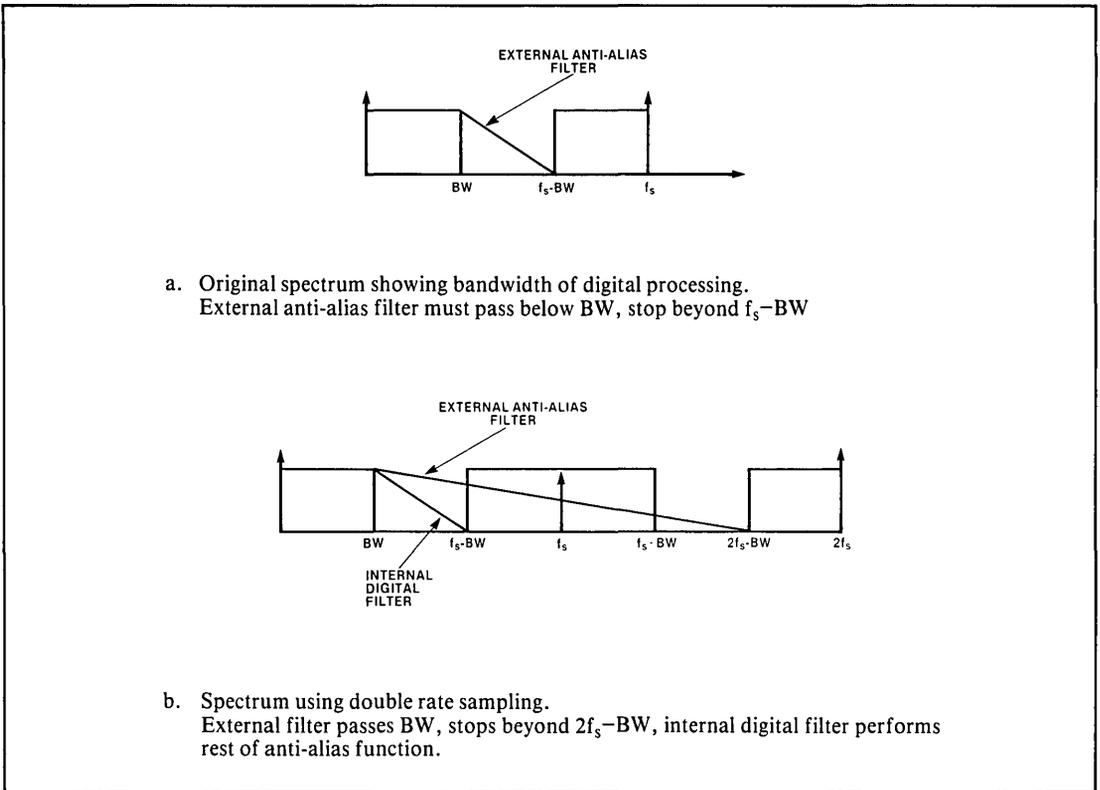
One means for achieving the higher sample rate is to use two copies each of the sampling routine and the anti-alias digital filter section. Figure 5-18 shows the impact on the external anti-alias requirements obtained by using the double sample rate technique. External anti-alias requirements may also be reduced for 2920 outputs by the use of interpolating digital filters, i.e., filters which compute values between successive samples.

Interpolating filters may also be realized by operating a filter stage at twice the sample rate by using two copies of the program within the 2920. There are two options for the input of such a filter operating at twice the sample rate. The same input sample may be used for both copies of the program, or one copy may use a zero-valued input. The latter case resembles using an impulse source where the former case is more like a sampled and held source. The Signal Processor Application Software/Compiler can be used to produce code for this mixed sample rate implementation. The methods produce somewhat different frequency responses.

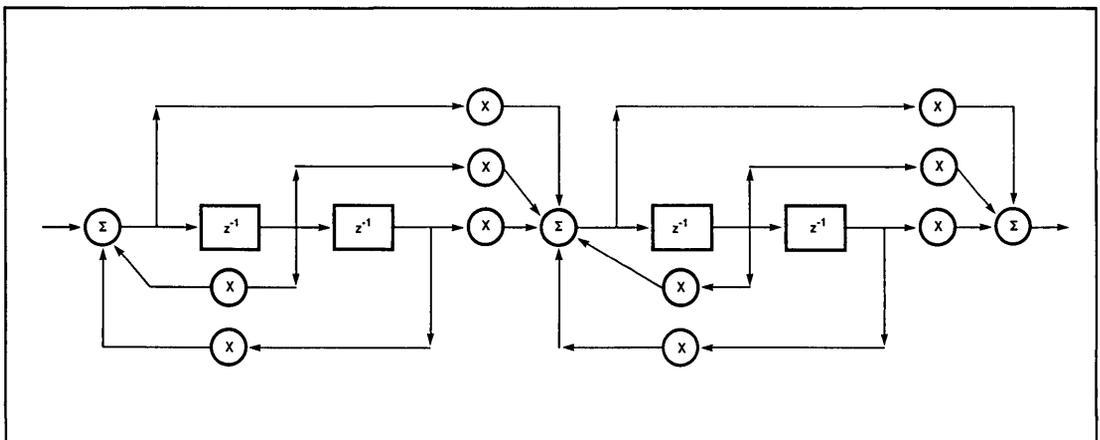
### 5.6.8 Other Filter Structures

In most of the examples described above, a cascade of filter stages has been assumed. However, when the impulse invariant transform is used, an alternate realization could be found by expanding into a sum of partial fractions, evaluating the impulse response associated with each fraction, and realizing the output of the filter as the sum of the section outputs. The resulting realization is shown in Figure 5-19b as opposed to the cascade structure of Figure 5-19a. In some cases, the parallel structure may be less sensitive to variable scaling than the cascade structure.

## SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

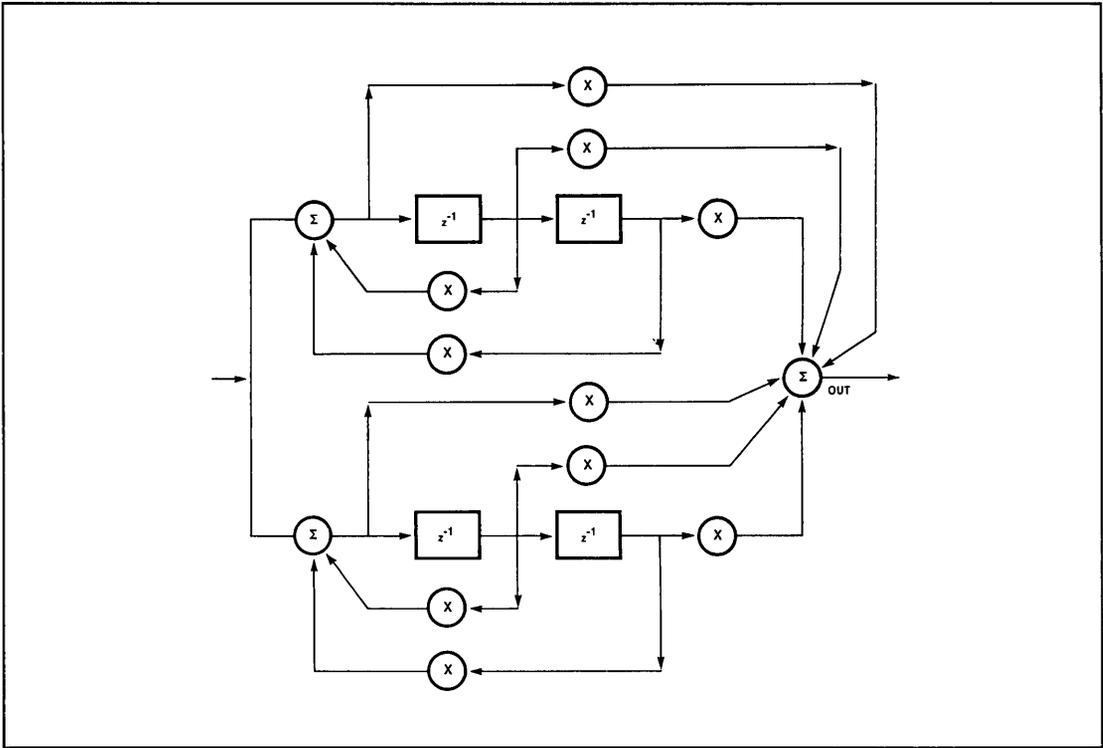


**Figure 5-18. Effects of Double Rate Input Sampling**



**Figure 5-19a. Cascade Structure for Complex Filter  
(Directly Derived from Matched Z or Bilinear Transform)**

# SUMMARY OF FILTER CHARACTERISTICS



**Figure 5-19b. Parallel Structure for Complex Filters  
(May Result from Impulse Invariant Transform)**







# CHAPTER 6 ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

## 6.0 ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

This chapter includes examples illustrating the implementation of some special functions with the 2920 Signal Processor. In particular, time variable filters, pseudo random noise generation, and digital I/O are discussed.

### 6.1 Time Variable Filters

In some applications, filters do not remain fixed in their characteristics, but instead are varied with time. Such filters may be used for the tracking of time-varying signals, for synthesis of voice and music, etc. The digital nature of the 2920 also allows several filters to be varied together.

To realize a variable filter, the frequency characteristic controlling parameters ( $B_1$  and  $B_2$  in Figure 6-1) are made variables rather than fixed values. While Figure 6-1 represents only one second order filter section, more complicated variable filters can be made by simultaneously varying all stages of a multi-section filter, such as that shown in Figure 6-2. Although 2920 programs are sequential in nature, events are essentially simultaneous if they are completely processed within one sample interval, e.g., within one pass of a 2920 program.

The coefficients  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  in Figure 6-1 both control center frequency, while  $B_2$  alone affects bandwidth. Therefore, if only center frequency needs to be varied, only  $B_1$  need be made a variable.

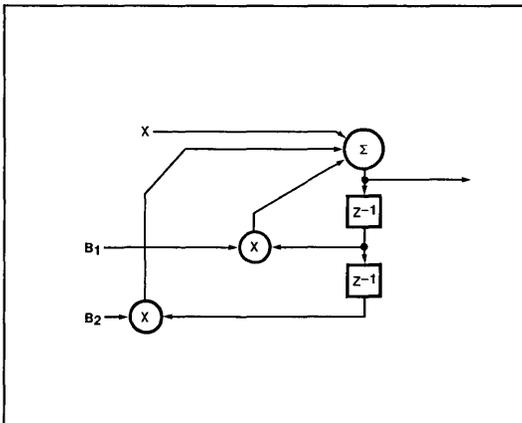


Figure 6-1. Basic Second Order Section

For a single stage, the following approximations may be used:

$$b \cong (-f_s/2\pi) \ln(-B_2) \quad B_2 \cong -e^{-2\pi(b/f_s)}$$

$$f_0 \cong (f_s/2\pi) \cos^{-1}(B_1/2\sqrt{B_2}) \quad B_1 \cong 2e^{-\pi b/f_s} \cos(2\pi f_0/f_s)$$

where  $f_s$  is the sampling frequency,  $f_0$  the filter center frequency, and  $b$  is the filter bandwidth. Note that the relationship between center frequency and controlling parameter  $B_2$  is nonlinear, following a cosine curve. In some cases, a nonlinear transformation may be used to compensate for this nonlinearity (see section 4.6 on nonlinear transformations).

If only bandwidth is to be controlled, and no shift of center frequency can be tolerated, then both coefficients must be made variable, and two variable by variable multiples must be performed for each variable stage.

More complex filters can be made variable by determining the relationships needed for each coefficient. If a single controlling parameter is to be used, the intervening relationships must be used to generate the  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  values needed for each stage.

When filter coefficients are varied, the changes can produce transients within the filter, whose values are also a function of the instantaneous values in the filter. It may be desirable to take steps to ensure that coefficients change slowly to minimize such transients.

**Design Example**—Consider a filter which must have a fixed bandwidth of 80 Hz  $\pm$  5 Hz, while its center frequency is variable from approximately 800 Hz to 1450 Hz. A sample rate of 8000 Hz is to be used.

Using  $75 \leq b \leq 85$  Hz for bandwidth gives a range of possible values for  $B_2$ :

$$0.9428 \geq |B_2| \geq 0.9354$$

A value of  $B_2 = -0.9375 = -(1-1/16)$  can be realized in two 2920 program steps, and gives a bandwidth of 82 Hz.

With this value for  $B_1$ , the range for  $B_1$  can be found as

$$1.5667 \geq B_1 \geq 0.8101$$

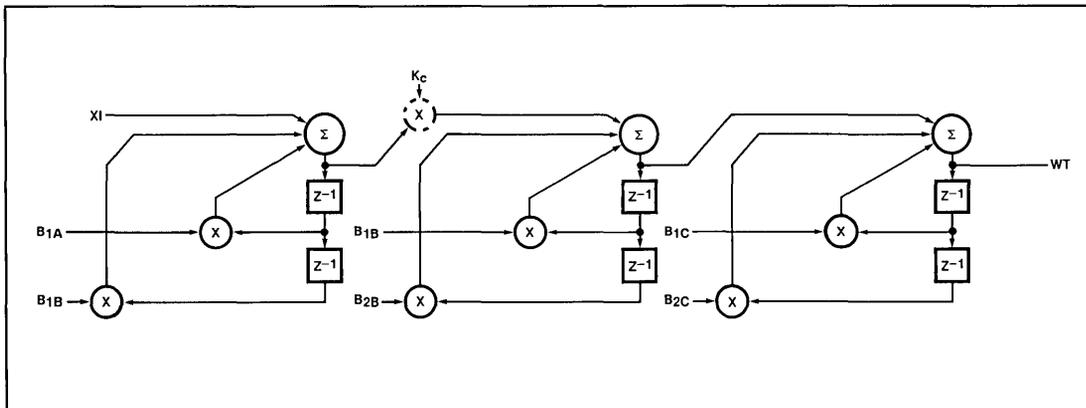


Figure 6-2. Cascade Realization

This range for  $B_1$  suggests that a control variable representing a fraction of  $B_1$  could be used (as any control variable  $c$  is limited to the range  $-1 \leq c < 1.0$ ) or  $B_1$  could be represented as the sum of a constant and variable part, e.g.,  $B_1 = 0.7546$ . As  $c$  varies from 0.0601 to 0.8167, the filter sweeps through the desired range. By limiting  $c$  to positive values, i.e.,  $0 \leq c < 1.0$ , some additional range is provided, and a simpler multiply algorithm is usable.

Therefore a block diagram such as is shown in Figure 6-3 results where the filter input is  $X$ , its output is  $Y$ , and  $0 < c \leq 1$  is the control parameter.

The maximum gain of the filter can be found from

$$G_{\max} = 1 / ((1 + B_2) \sqrt{1 + B_1 / (4B_2)})$$

For the coefficient values given, the maximum gain is 21.9, when  $c = 1.0$ .

Note that the gain varies with the value of  $c$ , reaching a minimum when  $c = 0.0$  of 17.9, corresponding to a 1.76 dB gain variation over the setting range. If such a variation is unacceptable,  $c$  may be used to weight the input  $X$  to compensate. For example, if the weighting of  $X$  is of the form

$$X(2c - 1) / 256$$

overflow is prevented, and gain variation is on the order of  $\pm 0.03$  dB.

This weighting of the input can be achieved by conditionally adding  $X$  to  $Y_0$  using the value of  $c$  in the DAR, followed by three terms to subtract  $11X/256$  from  $Y_0$ . Note, however, that the polarity of  $X$  has effectively been reversed by this procedure.

Table 6-1a shows the basic variable filter program, while Table 6-1b shows the gain compensation.

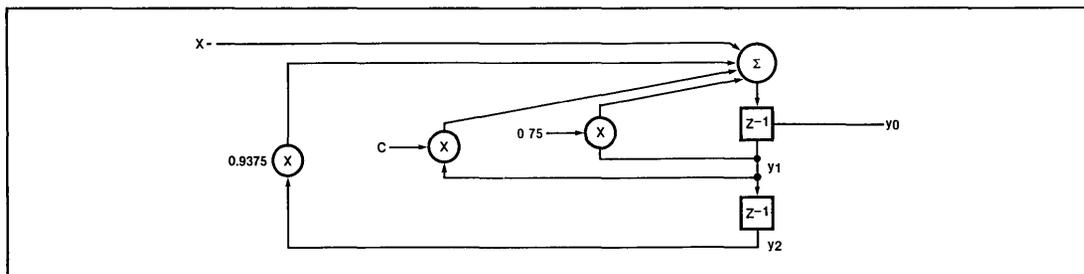


Figure 6-3. Second Order Stage With Variable Center Frequency

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

**Table 6-1a. Variable Frequency Filter Stage**

```
; program for variable frequency filter input is X,output Y0,intermediate values Y1, Y2
; B1 = 0.75 + C

; B2 is realized by successive additions/subtractions, and value -0.9375 corresponding to a bandwidth of approximately
; 82Hz when the sample rate is 8KHz.

; propogate through delay stages
LDA  Y2,  Y1, R00
LDA  Y1,  Y0, R00

; generate B2*Y2 in Y0
LDA  Y0,  Y2, R4      ; +1/16*Y2 in Y0
SUB  Y0,  Y2, R0      ; -15/16*Y2 in Y0

; set up for multiply
LDA  DAR, C,  R0

; perform multiply and add to Y0
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R1,  CND7
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R2,  CND6
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R3,  CND5
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R4,  CND4
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R5,  CND3
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R6,  CND2
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R7,  CND1
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R8,  CND0

; add 0.75*Y1 to Y0 to complete B1*Y1
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R1
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R2

; add in input to filter, scaled to prevent overflow
ADD  Y0,  Y1, R5

; filter range is 569 to 1493 Hz center frequency, resolution is 6 Hz at 569, 3 Hz at 1493
```

**Table 6-1b. Gain Compensation**

```
; in place of the last code line of table 6-1a, which added in the input scaled to avoid overflow, the gain compensation
; code below can be substituted:

; Gain compensation—add  $x(c/128)$ 
ADD  Y0,  X,  R8,  CND7
ADD  Y0,  X,  R9,  CND6
ADD  Y0,  X,  R10, CND5
ADD  Y0,  X,  R11, CND4
ADD  Y0,  X,  R12, CND3
ADD  Y0,  X,  R13, CND2

; Subtract  $X*11/256 = X(1/32 + 1/128 + 1/256)$ 
SUB  Y0,  X,  R5
SUB  Y0,  X,  R7
SUB  Y0,  X,  R8

; Note—only 7 bits precision were used in the multiplication by c, to prevent the need for additional temporary RAM
; locations
```

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

### 6.2 Noise Generation With The 2920

Some signal processing applications call for a source of noise. A noise generator may be modeled by a pseudo-random number generator. The 2920 realization shown in Table 6-2 is implemented by a feedback shift register, using only one variable location. The shift operation is realized by loading the number to itself shifted appropriately. The exclusive-or operation (XOR) is used to generate the bit to be entered into the shift register which is done by the addition operation.

### 6.3 Digital Input/Output

If parameters used in the 2920 need to be transferred on or off the chip, an analog voltage is the natural way to represent the parameter. An example has been shown for a voltage controlled variable frequency oscillator. However, in many applications, the source or receiver of the parameter requires a digital representation. Various signals in and out of the 2920 and its processing power can be used to provide digital I/O. This section will describe some of the techniques, important issues in the choice of techniques and some examples.

A variety of methods are useful for digital I/O. The choice will depend on knowing some of the following for your application; The maximum data rate, how many bits per second, per sample period, or per program pass? Some methods are faster in continuous bit rate. How often does data change? Can a buffer and a slow data rate be used because the data changes infrequently? What is the natural format of the data; bit serial or parallel, for example? What controls the transfer? Is the 2920 the master or the slave in the I/O process? Is the transfer synchronous or non-synchronous with the 2920 program execution? What resources are available on the 2920 for digital I/O after the main function has been accomplished; how many SIGIN or SIGOUT pins are free? How much program space is available for digital I/O or what is the composition of the main program; is it easier to add more digital or more analog instructions?

Typically an I/O transfer has the data bit representing a binary one or zero, a clock or activating signal and one or more control signals. The resources on the 2920 for possible use in these three functions are:

SIGIN(K). These four pins provide the only possible inputs (other than the RESET which is useful only for the control function). A sequence of IN(K) and CVT(K)

Table 6-2. Noise Generator Routine

```
; Random noise generator using feedback shift register.

; Register length is 17 bits.
; First test for all zeros condition—ensure proper start.
; TEMP is temporarily used variable, NGEN is generator output.

    LDA    TEMP,    NGEN,    L1    ; test subtraction, negative result implies need for initialization-
    SUB    TEMP,    KP1,     R13   ; move to DAR for sign test, init if neg.
    LDA    DAR,     TEMP,
    LDA    TEMP,    KP4,     CNDS

; Next fetch the 17th bit, test and move to DAR

    LDA    TEMP,    KP1,     R13
    AND    TEMP,    NGEN,    L1
    SUB    TEMP,    KP1,     R13   ; Test subtraction to convert bit to sign; set DAR to +1.0 for 1,
    LDA    DAR,     TEMP     ; -1.0 for 0

; Next bit of shift register is XOR of bits 17 and bit 5

    XOR    DAR,     NGEN     ; generate in DAR

; Shift register right, and fill in new value

    LDA    NGEN,    NGEN,    R1    ; shift right
    ADD    NGEN,    KP4,     CNDS
```

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

instructions put the input bit in the DAR. The maximum input rate is determined by the size of the input sample and hold capacitor. The threshold between a zero and a one can be set anywhere between 0 and  $\pm V_{REF}$  by what is initially in the DAR.

**SIGOUT (K).** These eight outputs can provide a logical one and zero at any two voltage levels between  $\pm V_{REF}$  with a load DAR and OUT (K) sequence. Open drain TTL levels are possible in groups of four output pins controlled by M1 and M2 if  $V_{REF} \geq 1.5$  volts. External pull-up resistors should be used. Speed is the same for either analog or TTL output mode.

**OF.** This open drain output provides a high speed TTL output which may be set or cleared with a single instruction.

**CCLK.** This open drain clock signal which occurs every four instruction executions, although always present, provides a convenient activating signal for digital I/O transfers.

**RST/EOP.** As an open drain output the **EOP** is a convenient clock or control signal for transfers which occurs only once per program pass. **RST** can be a non-synchronous control input when gated with **CCLK**.

Each complete I/O operation may consist of four different operations; a control sequence, a data assembly or put-away sequence, a data transfer sequence and a clocking or activation sequence. Specific examples are given using the different inputs and outputs on the 2920. The examples are not exhaustive but they show some representative sequences for the four functions in a complete I/O operation.

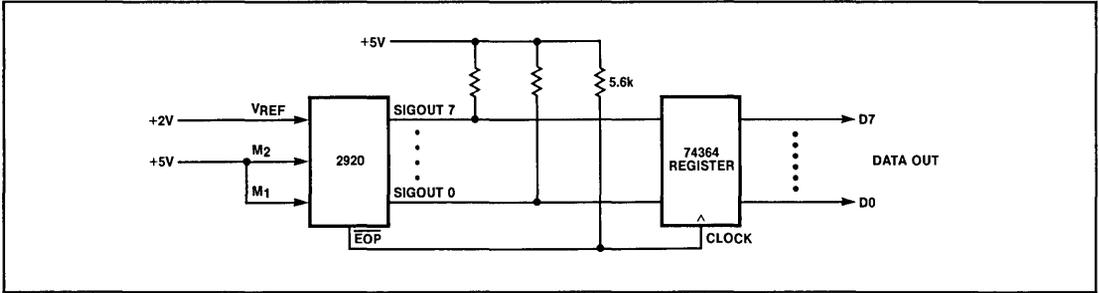
**Output Parallel**—For synchronous parallel output of one byte (8 bits) per program pass with the 2920 as master (see Figure 6-4). Table 6-3 shows the instruction sequence.

**Table 6-3. Digital Output: Parallel**

| Instruction Sequence. |                       |      |                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------|---------------------------|
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | DATA | Load output byte into DAR |
| LDA                   | D7,                   | KP0  | Initialize Data buffers   |
| .                     |                       |      | D0-D7 to zero.            |
| LDA                   | D0,                   | KP0  |                           |
| LDA                   | D7,                   | KP7, | CND7                      |
| .                     |                       |      | Load +FS to data buffers  |
| .                     |                       |      | if tested bit = 1         |
| LDA                   | D0,                   | KP7, |                           |
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | D7   | CND0                      |
| .                     |                       |      | Output Data buffers       |
| .                     |                       |      | D0-D7 on Outputs 0-7      |
| OUT                   | 7                     |      |                           |
| .                     |                       |      |                           |
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | D0   |                           |
| .                     |                       |      |                           |
| OUT                   | 0                     |      |                           |
| Summary:              |                       |      |                           |
|                       | Analog instructions   |      | 8 + 8B*                   |
|                       | Digital instructions  |      | 17                        |
|                       | Input pins            |      | 0                         |
|                       | Output pins           |      | 8                         |
|                       | Data memory locations |      | 8                         |
|                       | Overflow              |      | Not affected              |

\*B equals the number of analog NOP and OUT instructions needed for the device and clock rate used. See Chapter 3 for analog design rules.

# ADVANCED TECHNIQUES



**Figure 6-4. Logic Diagram for Digital Output: Parallel**

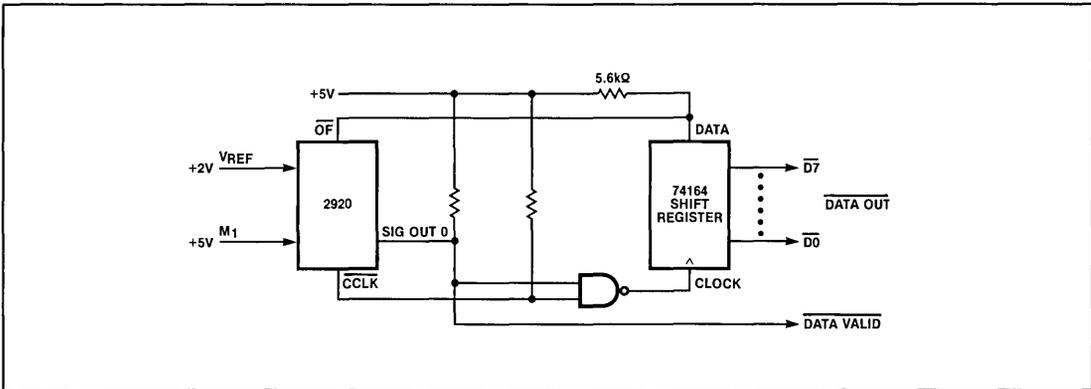
With a 10 MHz clock and B=5, the total of 65 instructions for output would provide a maximum of 38 K bytes/second transfer rate. With a full length program this would be reduced by a factor of three.

**Output Serial**—For synchronous parallel output of one byte using serial transfer out of the 2920 overflow (OF) pin. Multiple bytes per program pass can be outputted with the 2920 as master and one control signal, (see Figure 6-5). Table 6-4 shows the instruction sequence.

**Table 6-4. Digital Output: Serial**

| Instruction Sequence. |                      |      |       |                               |
|-----------------------|----------------------|------|-------|-------------------------------|
| Instruction sequence. |                      |      |       |                               |
|                       | LDA                  | DAR, | KP7   | Set DATA VALID                |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | OUT 0                |      |       |                               |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | LDA                  | DAR, | DATA  | Load byte of data into DAR    |
| 3                     | LDA                  | R,   | KP0   | Set R = 0                     |
| 0                     | LDA                  | R,   | KP4,  | R=0.5 if data bit 0 is 1      |
| 1                     | NOP                  |      | CND 0 |                               |
| 2                     | LDA                  | R,   | R,    | L2                            |
|                       |                      |      |       | Overflow if bit 0 was 1       |
| 3                     | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | LDA                  | R,   | KP0   | Repeat sequence through bit 7 |
|                       | LDA                  | R,   | KP4,  | CND 7                         |
|                       | LDA                  | DAR, | KP0   |                               |
|                       | LDA                  | R,   | R,    | L2                            |
|                       |                      |      |       | Overflow if bit 7 was 1       |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | OUT 0                |      |       | Clear DATA VALID              |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
|                       | .                    |      |       |                               |
| <b>Summary:</b>       |                      |      |       |                               |
|                       | Analog instructions  |      |       | 8 + 2B                        |
|                       | Digital instructions |      |       | 19                            |
|                       | Input pins           |      |       | 0                             |
|                       | Output pins          |      |       | 1                             |
|                       | Data memory location |      |       | 1                             |
|                       | Overflow             |      |       | Affected during I/O           |

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES



**Figure 6-5. Logic Diagram for Digital Output: Serial**

With a 10 MHz clock a transfer rate of 55 K Bytes per second is obtained for each instruction sequence or as high as 220 K Bytes/second per program pass.

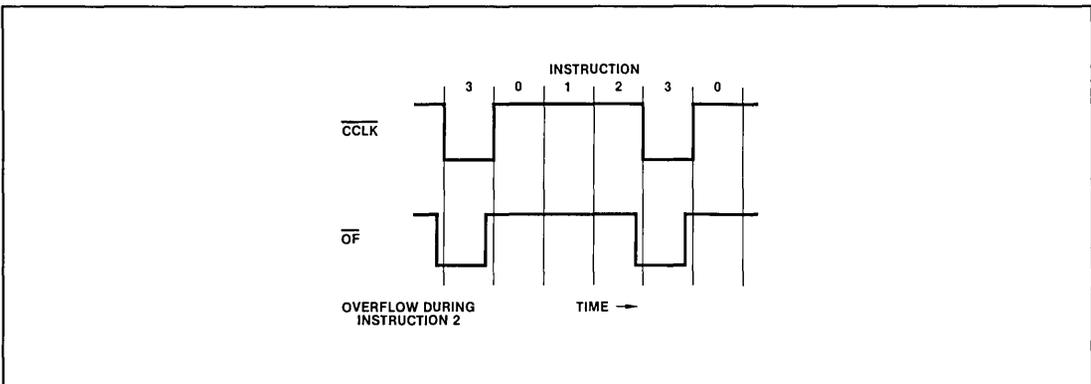
Note that the clocking by  $\overline{\text{CCLK}}$  requires that the overflowing instruction be located as shown in the diagram. The  $\overline{\text{CCLK}}$  signal will occur during instructions which are a multiple of four. The conditional test on the data and the potential overflow must be done with two separate instructions. A conditional overflow instruction will assert  $\overline{\text{OF}}$  even if the condition is not met. (Figure 6-6)

Overflows may occur during other portions of the program since there will be no clocking of the shift register.

**Input Parallel**—For synchronous parallel input of one byte per program pass with the 2920 as master. Table 6-5 shows the instruction sequence.

With a 10 MHz clock a transfer rate of 37.5 K Byte/sec is obtained for each instruction sequence which is once per program pass if the EOP is used for the control signal.

This method uses all analog input pins, often an unacceptable demand. Using fewer pins slows the data rate only slightly since the majority of the time is spent in sampling and converting rather than data manipulation. (See Figure 6-7.) Table 6-5 shows the instruction sequence.



**Figure 6-6. Timing Diagram**

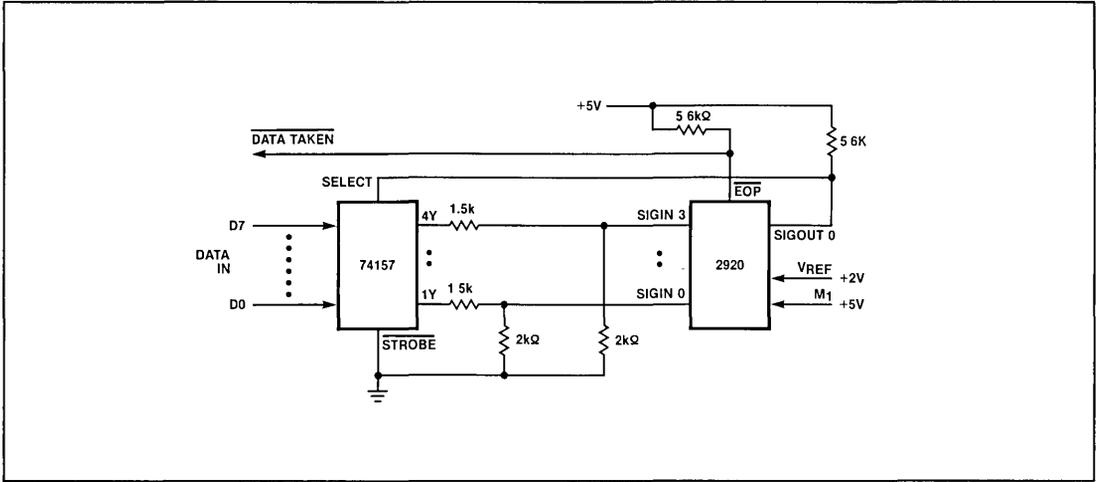
## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

**Table 6-5. Digital Input: Parallel**

| Instruction Sequence. |                       |      |    |   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------|----|---|
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | KP7  |    | Select higher order four bits           |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| OUT                   | 0                     |      |    |   |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | KP2  |    | Load DAR + FS/4                         |
| IN3                   |                       |      |    | Input Bit 3                             |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| CVT3                  |                       |      |    | Convert Bit 3                           |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| IN0                   |                       |      |    | Repeat through Bit 0                    |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| CVT0                  |                       |      |    | DAR contains four higher order bits     |
| SUB                   | DAR,                  | KP2  |    | MSB's                                   |
| LDA                   | D,                    | DAR, | L2 | Left shift DAR four bits and store in D |
|                       | DDA,                  | D,   | L2 |   |
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | KP0  |    | Select lower order                      |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | four bits.                              |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| OUT0                  |                       |      |    |   |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| LDA                   | DAR,                  | KP2  |    | Load DAR FS/4                           |
| IN3                   |                       |      |    |   |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| CVT3                  |                       |      |    |   |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| IN0                   |                       |      |    |   |
| .                     | .                     | .    | .  | .                                       |
| CVT0                  |                       |      |    | DAR contains four lower order bits      |
| SUB                   | DAR,                  | KP2  |    | Combine high and low order bits         |
| XOR                   | D,                    | DAR  |    |   |
| Summary:              |                       |      |    |   |
|                       | Analog instructions   |      |    | 8A + 2B + 8C*                           |
|                       | Digital instructions  |      |    | 9                                       |
|                       | Input pins            |      |    | 4                                       |
|                       | Output pins           |      |    | 1                                       |
|                       | Data memory locations |      |    | 1                                       |
|                       | Overflow              |      |    | Not affected                            |

\*A equals the number of IN instructions and C equals the CVT and NOP instruction needed for the device and clock rate used. See Chapter 3 for analog design rules.

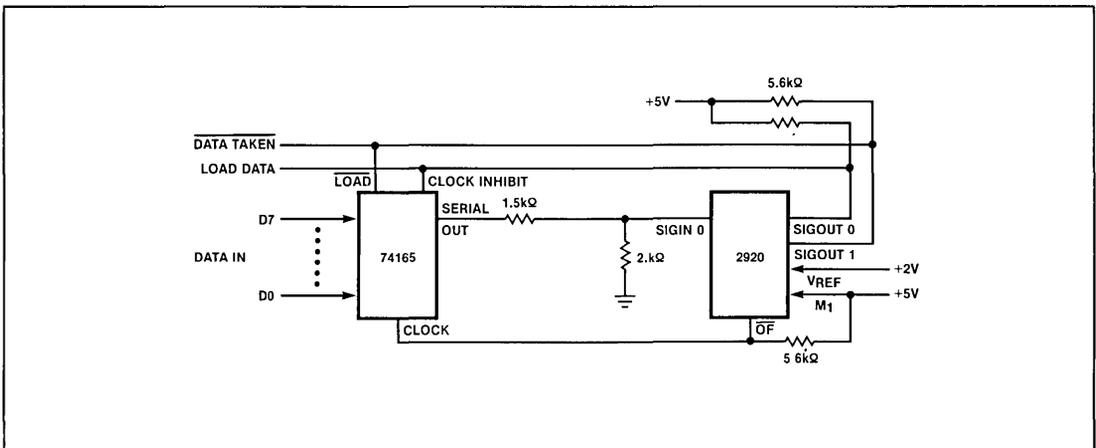
## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES



**Figure 6-7. Logic Diagram for Digital Input: Parallel**

**Input Parallel-Serial**—This example reduces the number of analog inputs committed to digital parameters yet accepts parallel loads. The transfer is synchronous with the 2920 as master and multiple bytes can transfer per program pass (see Figure 6-8). Table 6-6 shows the instruction sequence.

With a 10 MHz clock a transfer rate of 30K Bytes/sec is obtained for the instruction sequence or up to twice that amount per full program pass.



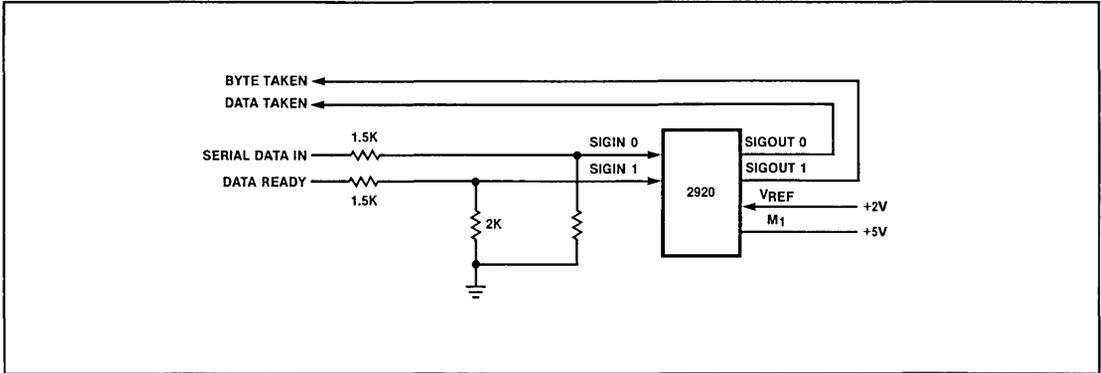
**Figure 6-8. Logic Diagram for Digital Input: Parallel-Serial**

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

**Table 6-6. Digital Input: Parallel-Serial**

| Instruction Sequence. |      |      |              |                                |
|-----------------------|------|------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| LDA                   | D,   | KP0  |              |                                |
| LDA                   | DAR, | KP0  |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| OUT 0                 |      |      |              | Enable parallel load           |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| OUT 1                 |      |      |              | Enable clock                   |
| LDA                   | DAR, | KP7  |              | Clear parallel load            |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| OUT 0                 |      |      |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| LDA                   | DAR, | KP2  |              | DAR = FS/4                     |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| IN 0                  |      |      |              | Input D7                       |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| CVT 3                 |      |      |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| LDA                   | R,   | KP7, | L1           | OF clocks shift register       |
| IN 0                  |      |      |              | Input D6                       |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| CVT 2                 |      |      |              |                                |
| LDA                   | R,   | KP7, | L1           | Repeat through D4              |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| CVT 0                 |      |      |              |                                |
| LDA                   | R,   | KP7, | L1           | DAR contains D7-D4             |
| SUB                   | DAR, | KP2  |              | Left shift DAR two bits into D |
| LDA                   | D,   | DAR, | L2           | Repeat for D3-D0               |
| LDA                   | DAR, | KP2  |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| IN 0                  |      |      |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| CVT 3                 |      |      |              |                                |
| LDA                   | R,   | KP7, | L1           |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| CVT 0                 |      |      |              |                                |
| SUB                   | DAR, | KP2  |              | DAR contains D3-D0             |
| XOR                   | DAR, | D,   | L2           | DAR contains D0-D7             |
| LDA                   | D,   | DAR  |              | Load D7-D0 into D              |
| LDA                   | DAR, | KP7  |              |                                |
| .                     |      |      |              |                                |
| OUT 1                 |      |      |              | Disable clock                  |
| Summary:              |      |      |              |                                |
| Analog instructions   |      |      | 8A + 3B + 8C |                                |
| Digital instructions  |      |      | 19           |                                |
| Input pins            |      |      | 1            |                                |
| Output pins           |      |      | 2            |                                |
| Data memory locations |      |      | 2            |                                |
| Overflow              |      |      | Affected     |                                |

## ADVANCED TECHNIQUES



**Figure 6-9. Logic Diagram for Digital Input: Serial**

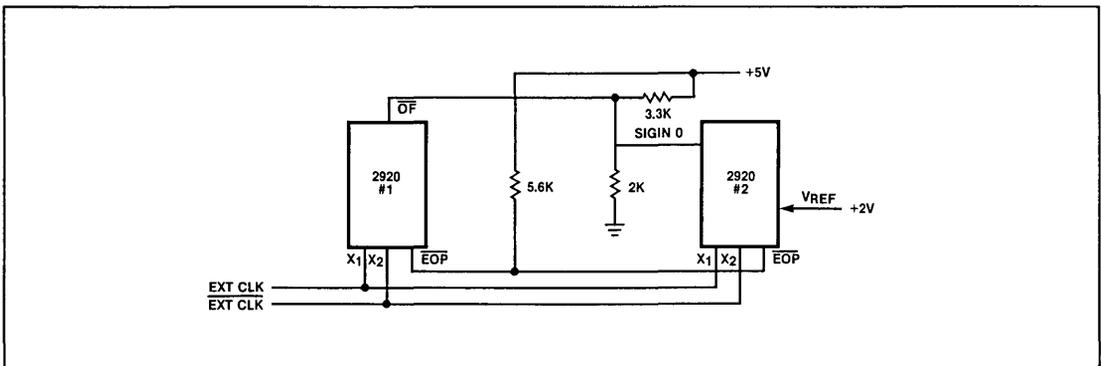
**Input Serial**—This example illustrates non-synchronous inputs on a bit serial basis with one bit per program pass and multiple bytes put away in the 2920 (see Figure 6-9). Table 6-7 shows the instruction sequence.

The BYTE TAKEN signal may be used for BYTES TAKEN by having it asserted on the reset of CT2 rather than CT1.

**Transfers Between Two 2920's**—When two or more 2920's are used together digital parameters may need to be passed between them. The obvious method would seem to be to output an analog representation of the

number which is converted back in the receiving 2920. This method is limited to about four bits per transfer because the effective gain between an output and an input is approximately 0.9. Generally fewer instructions and/or greater speed result if the overflow is used for outputting and one bit conversion made on input. The input analog sample time is reduced if only a binary decision is made and the lengthy output sequence is avoided with the use of the overflow pin.

The previous examples of serial output and input may be used for the program sequence. Synchronism of the two programs is assured within seven instructions by the paralleled EOP signals and use of the same external clock. Exact synchronization is possible with external logic. (See Figure 6-10.)



**Figure 6-10. Synchronizing Multiple 2920s**

# ADVANCED TECHNIQUES

**Table 6-7. Digital Input: Serial**

| Instruction Sequence.  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
|--|--------------|-------|-------|------|---|---------------------|----------|----------------------|----|------------|---|-------------|---|-----------------------|----|----------|--------------|
| LDA  | DAR          | KP2   |       |      | Load DAR with threshold<br>Input DATA READY |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| IN 1   |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | FLAG,        | KP0,  | CVT 6 |      | Sense DATA READY                            |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | FLAG,        | KP4,  | CND6  |      | If Data Ready FLAG=0.5                      |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDR  | SR,          | ST,   | R1,   | CND6 | Shift register if FLAG=0.5                  |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| IN 0   |              |       |       |      | Input data                                  |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| CVT6   |              |       |       |      | Sense DATA                                  |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| ADD  | SR,          | FLAG, | CND6  |      | Add data to shift register                  |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | FLAG, |       |      | Load DATA BIT TAKEN                         |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| OUT 0  |              |       |       |      | Output DATA BIT TAKEN                       |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| ADD  | CT1,         | FLAG, | R3    |      | Add bit counter                             |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | CT    |       |      | Test bit counter                            |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | CT1,         | KP0,  | CNDS  |      | Full byte taken?                            |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DATA,        | SR,   | CNDS  |      | Store byte                                  |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | SR,          | KP0,  | CNDS  |      | Clear shift register                        |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | BYTE,        | KP0   |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | BYTE,        | FLAG, | CNDS  |      | Test BYTE                                   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | BYTE  |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| OUT 1  |              |       |       |      | Output BYTE TAKEN                           |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | KP0   |       |      | Clear BYTE TAKEN                            |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| OUT 1  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| .  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| OUT 2  |              |       |       |      | Clear Data taken                            |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| <p>This sequence loads a serially input byte (8 bits) into location DATA. If multiple bytes are to be input then an additional counter (shift register) can be added at the end to sequentially update each of four data bytes DATA0-3.</p>  |              |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | BYTE  |       |      | New byte available?                         |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | CT2,         | CT2,  | L1,   | CND7 | Shift register if yes.                      |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DAR,         | CT2   |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | CT2,         | KP1,  | R1,   | CNDS | Reset byte counter                          |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DATA0,       | DATA, | CND7  |      | Where does new data byte go?                |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DATA1,       | DATA, | CND6  |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DATA2,       | DATA, | CND5  |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| LDA  | DATA3,       | DATA, | CND4  |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| <p>Summary:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Analog instructions</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">2A+4B+2C</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Digital instructions</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">22</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Input pins</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Output pins</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">2</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Data memory locations</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">10</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px 5px;">Overflow</td> <td style="padding: 2px 5px; text-align: right;">Not affected</td> </tr> </table> |              |       |       |      |   | Analog instructions | 2A+4B+2C | Digital instructions | 22 | Input pins | 2 | Output pins | 2 | Data memory locations | 10 | Overflow | Not affected |
| Analog instructions  | 2A+4B+2C     |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| Digital instructions   | 22           |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| Input pins   | 2            |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| Output pins  | 2            |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| Data memory locations  | 10           |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |
| Overflow   | Not affected |       |       |      |   |                     |          |                      |    |            |   |             |   |                       |    |          |              |





# CHAPTER 7 APPLICATION EXAMPLES

## 7.0 APPLICATION EXAMPLES

This chapter will emphasize signal processing applications. The corresponding 2920 software necessary to implement the particular functions will be generated in this chapter. Some of the functions demonstrated include waveform generation, filtering, piecewise linear approximation, and a complete spectrum analyzer implemented on a single 2920 device.

### 7.1 Sweeping Local Oscillator

As an example of using digital processing techniques to implement a typical analog circuit, consider the development of a sweeping local oscillator (SLO). This circuit is made up of three building blocks:

- 1) a sawtooth wave sweep rate generator, (SRG),
- 2) a voltage-controlled oscillator, (VCO), and
- 3) a waveform modifier (to reduce harmonic content of the VCO).

Each of these building blocks is discussed below, and the final coding is developed and displayed.

**Sweep Rate Generator**—This subsystem controls the minimum frequency of the VCO, its frequency range, and the rate of change of frequency. It does so by producing a sawtooth wave whose slope determines the rate of change, whose voltage excursion is proportional to the frequency range, and whose offset represents the minimum of that range.

The sawtooth wave is simple to generate: continuous decrementing of a register by a fixed value produces a linear negative slope. When the register voltage changes sign (crosses zero), a constant equal to the desired peak amplitude of the sawtooth is added. This is accomplished using a load (LDA) instruction conditioned on the sign bit (Section 4.2).

The first step is to generate the slope constant. In this example, assume that four sweeps per second are desired. The resulting calculations are given in Figure 7-1.

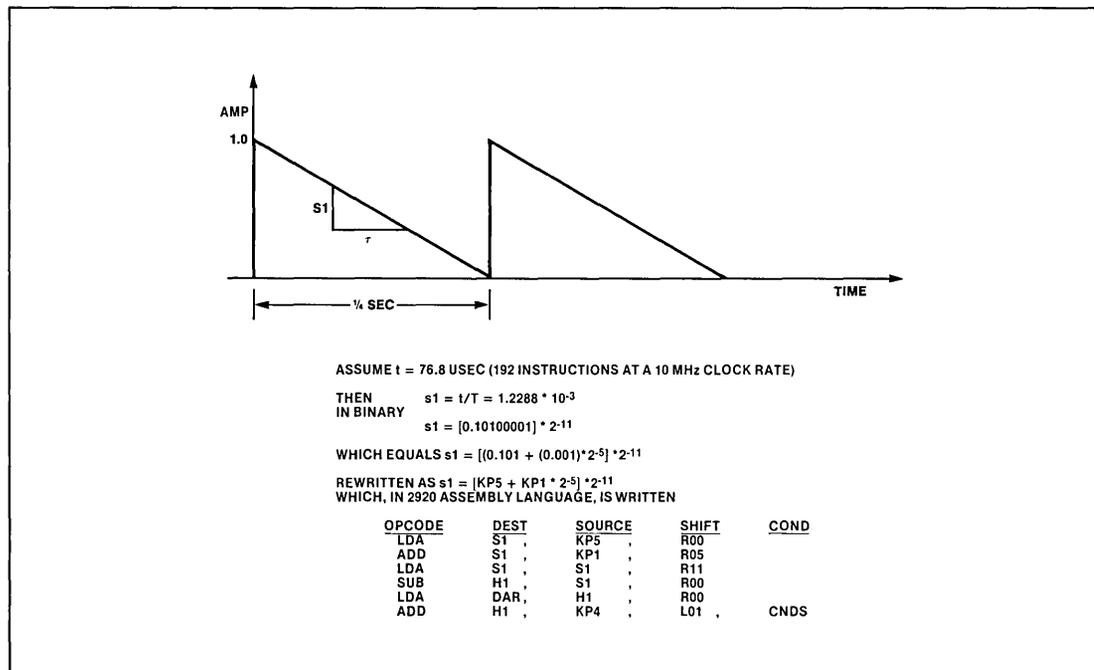


Figure 7-1. Sawtooth Sweep Rate Generator

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

**Voltage Controlled Oscillator**—The VCO is developed similarly, except that the decrement value is not a constant, but rather is determined by a scaled version of the SRG input waveform. Assuming a sweep from DC to 1.3 KHz, an offset would be determined by the low frequency and the scaling factor by the high frequency. The net result would be a sawtooth wave with a period varying as a function of time.

This high frequency sawtooth wave (DC to 1.3 KHz) has significant harmonic content, which will be reflected by the sampling frequency harmonics and will cause aliasing distortion of the SLO output. Digital filters cannot be used to compensate for this because they are also susceptible to the aliasing components.

Some means must therefore be found to reduce the harmonic content of this signal. One approach is to filter the VCO output using an external filter. This would involve additional hardware, plus many extra instructions for I/O and A/D conversion. An alternative is to shape the waveform in the time domain to look more like the desired sinusoid.

Investigation of the Fourier Transforms of various symmetric waveforms reveals that a trapezoidal waveform can be adjusted so that even harmonics are eliminated

and the first odd harmonic is the fifth. This adjustment is done by selecting the top of the trapezoid to be  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the peak of a corresponding triangle wave. The flow diagram to accomplish this transformation is shown in Figure 7-2.

The final, correctly assembled 2920 program is shown in Figure 7-3. This listing gives the correct assembly code with comments, the hexadecimal object code, a symbol table with a list of errors or warnings, and RAM/ROM sizes. This program requires 18 instructions and 5 RAM locations.

### 7.2 Piecewise Linear Logarithmic Amplifier

The purpose of the logarithmic amplifier is to amplify low level signals with a higher gain than high level signals to reduce the overall output dynamic range. Furthermore, the log amplifier described here provides an example of the use of 2920 code to implement a piecewise linear approximation of a general function. The input dynamic range of the amplifier is 50 dB with an error of less than 1 dB for signal levels to  $-30$  dB. The transfer characteristic is shown in Figure 7-4.

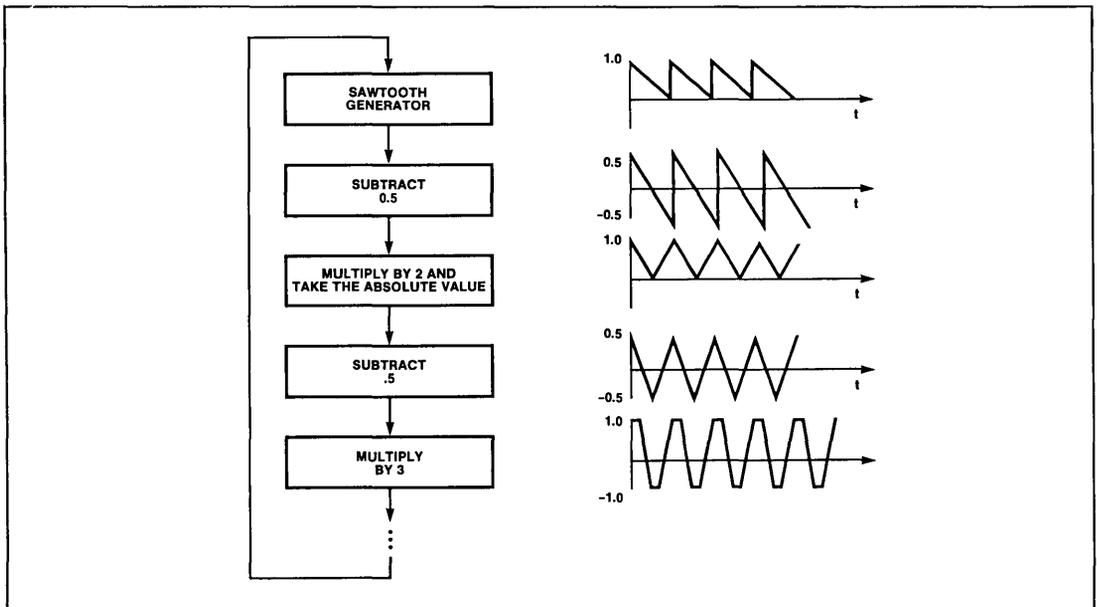


Figure 7-2. Waveform Shaper

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

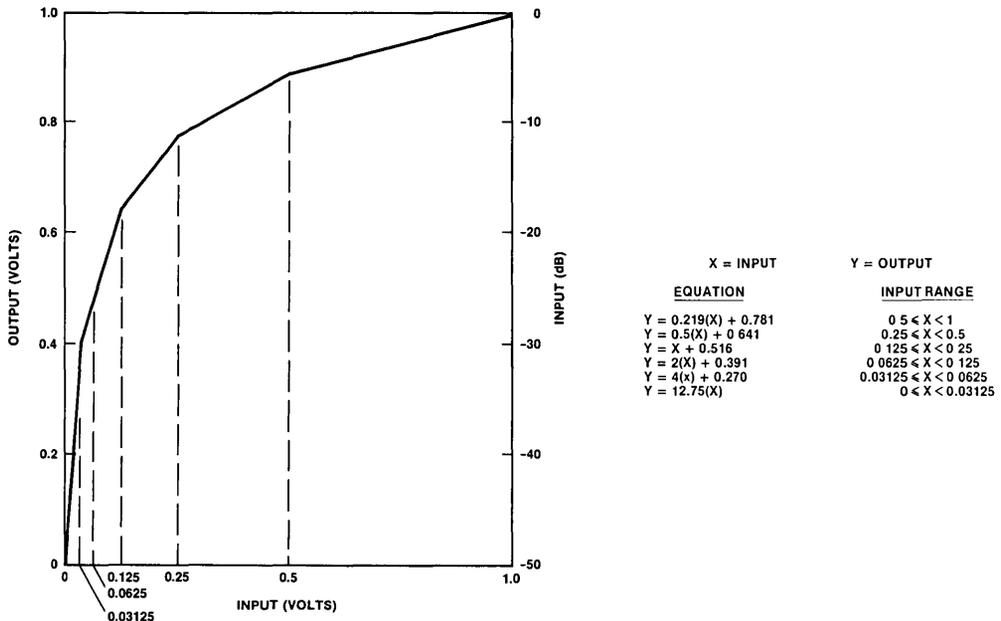
```

LINE  LOC  OBJECT  SOURCE STATEMENT
 1     0 48BAEF LDA S1,KP5,R00           ,SET SWEEP RATE FOR SLD = 4HZ
 2     1 40BAGC ADD S1,KP1,R05
 3     2 40004F LDA S1,S1,R11
 4     3 4000FB SUB H1,S1,R00           ,SWEEP RATE GENERATOR IS H1
 5     4 404CCF LDA DAR,H1,R00
 6     5 7882DD ADD H1,KP4,L01,CNDS     ,RESET H1 IF < 0
 7     6 440B6E LDA H2,H1,R04           ,H2 IS SCALED SWEEP WAVEFORM WHICH
 8     7 440B8C ADD H2,H1,R05           ,DRIVES VCO, RESULTING IN SLD MAX
 9     8 46006E LDA H2,H2,R04           ,FREQUENCY OF 1 3KHZ
10     9 440B6D ADD H2,H1,R12
11    10 4600F0 SUB VCO,H2,R00           ,VOLTAGE CONTROLLED OSCILLATOR
12    11 424CEF LDA DAR,VCO,R00
13    12 7C82DD ADD VCO,KP4,L01,CNDS     ,RESET VCO IF < 0
14    13 4218FF LDA OSC,VCO,R00         ,WAVESHAPING WILL BE DONE IN RAM LOCATION OSC
15    14 4892EB SUB OSC,KP4,R00         ,CENTER SAWTOOTH ABOUT ZERO
16    15 4810C7 ABS OSC,OSC,L01         ,DOUBLE AND TAKE ABSOLUTE VALUE
17    16 4892EB SUB OSC,KP4,R00         ,CENTER TRIANGLE WAVE ABOUT ZERO
18    17 4810CD ADD OSC,OSC,L01         ,MULTIPLY BY THREE WAVEFORM IS CLIPPED TO
19                                         ,BECOME TRAPAZOIDAL RESULT IS IN OSC

SYMBOL      VALUE
S1           0
H1           1
H2           2
VCO          3
OSC          4

ASSEMBLY COMPLETE
ERRORS      = 0
WARNINGS    = 0
RAMSIZE     = 5
ROMSIZE     = 18
    
```

**Figure 7-3. Sweeping Local Oscillator Program**



**Figure 7-4. Log Amplifier Piecewise Linear Approximation Transfer Characteristics**

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

Six linear sections are used to approximate the log amplifier. The equations for these sections and the range of inputs for which each equation used are given in Figure 7-4. The equations were obtained graphically, and then adjusted for coding efficiency. The input for the log amplifier must be positive and less than or equal to 1V. To simplify matters, the endpoints for the linear sections were chosen as powers of two. This way, only one bit of the number to be processed need be checked to determine whether that number falls within an input range. The constant multipliers (slopes) of the linear sections were chosen to minimize error while at the same time allowing the multiplications to be efficiently handled in 2920 code.

The outputs for the log amplifier are also less than or equal to 1V, and positive. An output of 1V corresponds to 0 dB, 0.8V to -10 dB, 0.6V to -20 dB, and so on. An output of 0V corresponds to -50 dB or below. For example, for a device with a maximum output of 1V, an output of 0.7V indicates a signal level of -15 dB. Regardless of  $V_{REF}$ , a 2920 output which is 70 percent

of full scale represents -15 dB. Any DC offset which may exist at the output of the part should be taken into account when interpreting the output in dB.

The equations used in the log amplifier program are shown in Figure 7-4, and the assembly code is given in Figure 7-5. The first linear section of the amplifier to be implemented is the sixth section, which corresponds to inputs less than  $1/32V$ . However, all input signals, regardless of amplitude, are processed by the equation for this section initially. The original signal is then placed in the DAR. All the following operations are conditional, and are performed only if the tested bit of the DAR is a "one". Otherwise, a NOP is performed. Each bit of the DAR is tested, starting with bit 3 and progressing to bit 7. When a "one" is located, the multiplier and offset corresponding to the indicated range of the output are used to compute the result. This result replaces any previously computed result. If no "ones" are encountered, the input is less than  $1/32V$ , and only NOP's are performed. The value computed for the sixth section then remains unmodified. Since the

```
***LOG AMP*****  
  
ABS XO, X0, R00          , PREVENT PROCESSING OF NEGATIVE NUMBERS  
  
  , SECTION 6  
LDA LOUT, X0, L02        , LOUT = 12 75(X0)  , 0 < X0 < 0 03125  
ADD LOUT, X0, L02  
ADD LOUT, X0, L02  
ADD LOUT, X0, R01  
ADD LOUT, X0, R02  
  
LDA DAR, X0, R00        , TRANSFER INPUT TO DAR TO DO CONDITIONAL ARITHMETIC  
  
  , SECTION 5  
LDA LOUT, X0, L02, CND3  , LOUT = 4(X0) + 0 270  , 0 03125 < X0 < 0 0625  
ADD LOUT, KP2, R00, CND3  
ADD LOUT, KP5, R05, CND3  
  
  , SECTION 4  
LDA LOUT, X0, L01, CND4  , LOUT = 2(X0) + 0 391  , 0 0625 < X0 < 0 125  
ADD LOUT, KP3, R00, CND4  
ADD LOUT, KP2, R04, CND4  
  
  , SECTION 3  
LDA LOUT, X0, R00, CND5  , LOUT = X0 + 0 516   , 0 125 < X0 < 0 25  
ADD LOUT, KP4, R00, CND5  
ADD LOUT, KP2, R04, CND5  
  
  , SECTION 2  
LDA LOUT, X0, R01, CND6  , LOUT = 0 5(X0) + 0 641 , 0 25 < X0 < 0 5  
ADD LOUT, KP5, R00, CND6  
ADD LOUT, KP2, R04, CND6  
  
  , SECTION 1  
LDA LOUT, X0, R03, CND7  , LOUT = 0 219(X0) + 0 781 , 0 5 < X0 < 1  
ADD LOUT, X0, R04, CND7  
ADD LOUT, X0, R05, CND7  
ADD LOUT, KP6, R00, CND7  
ADD LOUT, KP4, R04, CND7  
  
LDA DAR, LOUT, R00      , TRANSFER RESULT TO DAR TO OUTPUT OR OTHER  
                        , REGISTER FOR FURTHER PROCESSING
```

Figure 7-5. Piecewise Linear Log Amplifier Program

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

program starts checking for small signals and progresses to large signals, the computed value which corresponds to the signal range into which the input signal falls will be the final result.

If the input to the log amplifier has an offset error, this will show up at the output as an error which increases with decreasing input signal strength. An input offset equal to  $2^{-8}$  causes an error of about 2.5 dB in the approximation for the sixth section of the amplifier. If input offset should be a problem, it can be compensated for by adding a constant to the input before processing.

### 7.3 Digital Filter

A multi-frequency receiver requires a lowpass filter which can pass frequencies in the band from Dc to 1 KHz with less than 1 dB ripple, and must provide at least 25 dB of rejection for frequencies above 2KHz. A study of filter curves (such as the nomographs in A.I. Zverev, Handbook of Filter Synthesis, Wiley & Sons, N.Y., pp 140-143) shows that an elliptic function filter with 3 poles, 2 zeros, and a 25% reflection coefficient can meet these requirements. From page 178 of Zverev (for  $0 = 30$ ) the filter pole/zero values are found normalized to 1 rad/sec bandwidth. The normalized and denormalized values are listed in Table 7-1 for the selected filter.

**Table 7-1. Pole/Zero Locations**

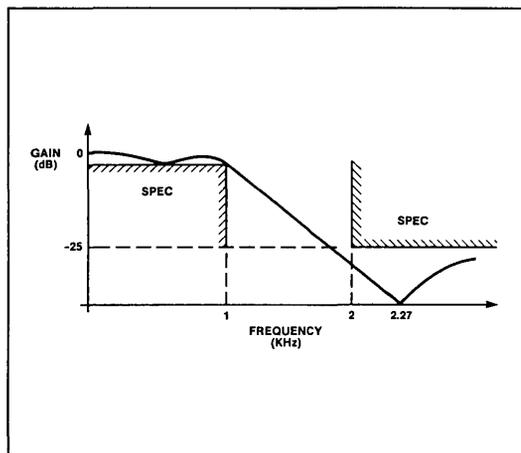
| Singularity       | Normalized (1rps)                                 | Denormalized (1 KHz)                                    |
|-------------------|---|---|
| Simple Pole       | $\sigma_0 = 0.83124$<br>$\omega_0 = 0$            | $\sigma_0 = -5222$ rps                                  |
| Complex Pole Pair | $\sigma_1 = -0.31128$<br>$\omega_1 = \pm 1.09399$ | $\sigma_1 = -1955.8$ rps<br>$\omega_1 = \pm 6873.7$ rps |
| Complex Zero Pair | $\sigma_2 = 0$<br>$\omega_2 = \pm 2.2701$         | $\sigma_2 = 0$ rps<br>$\omega_2 = 14263$ rps            |

The corresponding gain vs frequency and S-plane plots are shown in Figures 7-6 and 7-7, respectively.

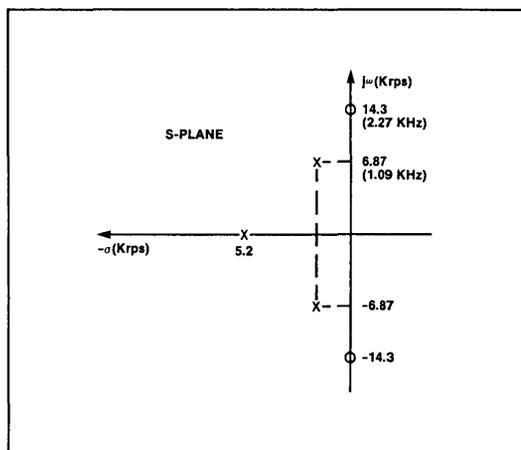
Now that the poles and zeros are identified, the basic block diagram of the digital filter can be drawn and the coefficients calculated. The 3 poles will require 3 delay

elements, 2 of which can be used to implement the 2 zeros. The cascaded structure not only simplifies the calculations, but also realizes a digital filter structure which requires less coefficient accuracy than a direct (not cascaded) implementation would. The block diagram is shown in Figure 7-8, along with the variable names that will be used in the 2920 program.

For purposes of this example, assume a sample rate of 10 KHz or a period of 100 microseconds. Further, assume that coefficient accuracies of  $\pm 1\%$  or better are required.



**Figure 7-6. Filter Characteristics**



**Figure 7-7. Pole and Zero Plot in the S-Plane**

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

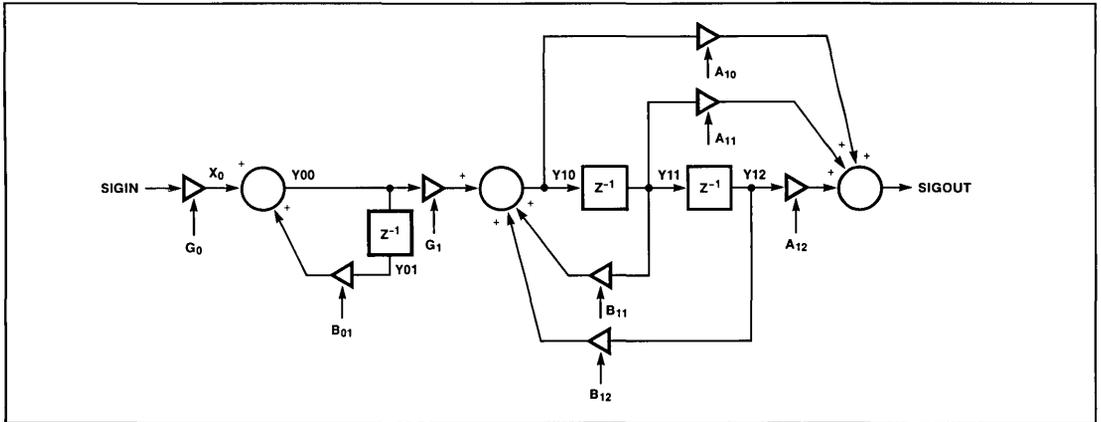


Figure 7-8. Block Diagram of Complex 3 Pole 2 Zero Elliptical Digital Filter

```

IGIS-11 2920 ASSEMBLER X102                                PAGE 1
ASSEMBLER INVOKED BY AS2920 FILTER
Three Pole Two Zero Elliptical Low-pass Filter
LINE LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
1          *TITLE ('Three Pole Two Zero Elliptical Low-Pass Filter')
2          Y12 EGU Y01
3          SIGOUT EGU Y12
4
5          , PDLE 1
6
7
8 0 400BEF LDA Y01, Y00          , Y01=Y00
9 1 40223E LDA Y00, DAR, R2      , Y00=G0*X0 (INPUT SCALED DOWN BY 4)
10 2 40001C ADD Y00, Y01, R1
11 3 40007C ADD Y00, Y01, R4
12 4 40007C ADD Y00, Y01, R5
13 5 40003B SUB Y00, Y01, R10     , Y00= G0*X0 + B01*Y01
14
15          , PDLE 2 & 3
16
17 6 4200EF LDA Y12, Y11        , Y12 = Y11
18 7 450BEF LDA Y11, Y10        , Y11 = Y10
19 8 440B5E LDA Y10, Y00, R3     , Y10 = G1*Y00 (STAGE PROPAGATION SCALED DOWN BY 8)
20 9 4600BC ADD Y10, Y11, R6
21 10 4600FD ADD Y10, Y11, R0
22 11 46003C ADD Y10, Y11, R2    , Y10 = B11*Y11
23 12 44001A SUB Y10, Y12, R1
24 13 44005A SUB Y10, Y12, R3
25 14 44009A SUB Y10, Y12, R5
26 15 44008A SUB Y10, Y12, R6    , Y10 = B11*Y11 + B22*Y12 + G1*Y00
27
28          , ZERO 1 & 2
29
30 16 420BED ADD SIGOUT, Y10     , SIGOUT = A10*Y10 + A12*Y12
31 17 42002A SUB SIGOUT, Y11, R2
32 18 42008A SUB SIGOUT, Y11, R5
33 19 4200EA SUB SIGOUT, Y11, R8 , SIGOUT = A10*Y10 + A11*Y11 + A12*Y12
34
35
36 20 4044CF LDA DAR, SIGOUT, L1 , OUTPUT SCALED UP BY 2
37
38
39          END

SYMBOL          VALUE
Y12              0
Y01              0
SIGOUT           0
Y00              1
Y11              2
Y10              3

ASSEMBLY COMPLETE
    
```

Figure 7-9. Complex Digital Filter Program

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

## Simple Pole Calculations

$$\begin{aligned}
 B_{01} &= e^{-\sigma T} = \exp [-(5222)(0.0001)] \\
 &= 0.593214 \\
 B_{01}+1\% &= 0.10011001011 \text{ (in binary)} \\
 B_{01} &= 0.10010111110. \\
 B_{01}-1\% &= 0.10010110010.
 \end{aligned}$$

A value in this range can be represented as

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 2^{-1} + 2^{-4} + 2^{-5} - 2^{-10} \\
 \text{dc gain} &= 1/1 - B_{01} = 2.4583
 \end{aligned}$$

## Complex Pole Calculation

$$\begin{aligned}
 B_{11} &= 2e^{-\sigma T} \cos \omega T \\
 &= 2 \exp [-(1955.8)(0.0001)] \\
 &\quad \cos [(6873.7)(0.0001)] \\
 &= 1.271229. \\
 B_{11}+1\% &= 1.01001000101 \text{ (in binary)} \\
 B_{11} &= 1.01000101011 \\
 &= 2^0 + 2^{-2} + 2^{-6}. \\
 B_{11}-1\% &= 1.01000010001. \\
 B_{12} &= -e^{-2\sigma T} = \exp [-(2)(1955.8)(0.0001)] \\
 &= -0.67627194. \\
 B_{12}+1\% &= 0.10101110110. \\
 B_{12} &= 0.10101101001. \\
 B_{12}-1\% &= 0.10101011011. \\
 &= -2^{-1} - 2^{-3} - 2^{-5} - 2^{-6}. \\
 \text{max gain} &= [(1+B_2)\sqrt{1+(B_1^2/4B_2)}]^{-1} \\
 &= 4.7949.
 \end{aligned}$$

## Complex-zero calculations

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_{10} &= 1. \\
 A_{11} &= -(2)(A_{01}) e^{-\sigma_2 T} \cos \omega_2 T \\
 &= -0.28798805 \\
 &= 0.01001001101 \text{ (in binary)} \\
 &= -2^{-2} - 2^{-5} - 2^{-8}. \\
 A_{12} &= A_{01} e^{-2\sigma_2 T} \\
 &= (1) \exp(0) \\
 &= 1.0
 \end{aligned}$$

## 7.4 The 2920 as a Spectrum Analyzer

A scanning spectrum analyzer embodies many functions usable in a broad class of analog applications. These functions include lowpass and bandpass filters, multipliers (mixers), detectors, and oscillators. The spectrum analyzer is a useful circuit which lends itself to

applications such as speech processing, industrial control, medical electronics, seismic and sonar signal detection and analysis.

The implementation of a spectrum analyzer using a sampled data system requires an understanding of sampling theory and digital signal processing, as well as the ability to specify the system in analog terms. A basic review of sampling theory was provided in Chapter 2.

Once the analog block diagram of the application is complete, it is relatively straightforward to implement each subsystem as a block of code in the 2920 signal processor. The following section describes the block diagram of the spectrum analyzer and discusses design considerations. Implementation of the spectrum analyzer is discussed in terms of the actual design process using the signal processor.

### 7.4.1 Description of Spectrum Analyzer

The purpose of this spectrum analyzer is to determine the long term spectral characteristics of a signal in the 200 Hz to 3.2 KHz frequency band. The approach is to sweep the input signal through a high resolution (narrowband) bandpass filter and observe the filter response as a function of the frequency sweep. The spectrum analyzer block diagram and parameters are determined and sampled data considerations are taken into account. The 2920 signal processor code is then straightforward to develop for the multiplier, sweep generator, voltage-controlled oscillator, full-wave rectifier, and output lowpass filter sections of the analyzer. The specifications of the analyzer are given below:

**Table 7-2. Spectrum Analyzer Specifications**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| • input bandwidth  | : 3 KHz                                     |
| • resolution bandwidth                                   | : 100 Hz                                    |
| • sweep rate   | : 6 KHz/sec or 0.5 sec/Band                 |
| • dynamic range  | : 48 dB                                     |
| • inputs - analog signal                                 | -1V ≤ SIG ≤ 1V                              |
| • outputs - frequency response amplitude (vertical axis) | sweep waveform (sawtooth) (horizontal axis) |

### 7.4.2 Block Diagram Description

Ideally, a scanning spectrum analyzer could be implemented by simply scanning a tunable narrowband bandpass filter across the input signal frequency to determine

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

the signal energy at any frequency. Practically speaking, it is nearly impossible to design a complex tunable analog filter which can cover a 10 to 1 range of frequencies, especially near DC. When tuning is required, even digital implementation becomes very complex and hardware inefficient. It is therefore easier to realize the equivalent of the scanning filter by sweeping the signal past a fixed tuned narrow and bandpass filter. This is accomplished by the system illustrated in the block diagram of Figure 7-10.

The input signal spectrum is first shaped by the input lowpass filter (LPF) (in addition to the anti-aliasing filter shaping) to avoid overlapping spectral components after mixing. The filtered signal then is multiplied (mixed) by the sweeping local oscillator (SLO) to generate upper and lower sidebands centered about the SLO frequency. The spectral characteristics of the system are shown in Figure 7-11. The bandpass filter (BPF) is centered at 4.5 KHz with a 100 Hz bandwidth. Figure 7-11a shows the filter characteristics. The SLO sweeps from 1.3 KHz to 4.3 KHz as seen in Figure 7-11b.

After mixing, the upper and lower sidebands are seen in Figures 7-11c and 2d for SLO frequencies of 1.3 and 4.3 KHz, respectively. Only the upper sideband is of interest, however, as it is swept across the BPF and the signal energy is extracted. When the SLO is at 1.3 KHz, the BPF is looking at the high band (3.2 KHz). As the

SLO frequency increases, at a SLO frequency of 4.3 KHz, the BPF "sees" the signal energy at 200 Hz (4.5 KHz minus 4.3 KHz).

The block diagram shows that the BPF output is then passed through a full wave rectifier (FWR) and lowpass filter to extract the envelope from the 4.5 KHz carrier, which is generated when signal energy is present. The resulting signal spectrum is centered at DC and shown in Figure 7-11e.

The sweep output provides a horizontal sweep voltage for an X-Y display. The purpose of the delay shown in Figure 7-10 is to synchronize the sweep output with the amplitude response output. This delay should approximately equal the propagation delays of the BPF and output LPF.

I/O—The input to the spectrum analyzer is the analog signal to be analyzed. There are two outputs identified in Figure 7-10. These include the frequency sweep output which becomes the horizontal axis drive to a scope, the VCO output, the the BPF amplitude response (both linear and logarithmic) output which becomes the vertical axis drive to the scope.

The block diagram shows the basic functions or subsystems which must be implemented to operate the spectrum analyzer. In the digital implementation there must

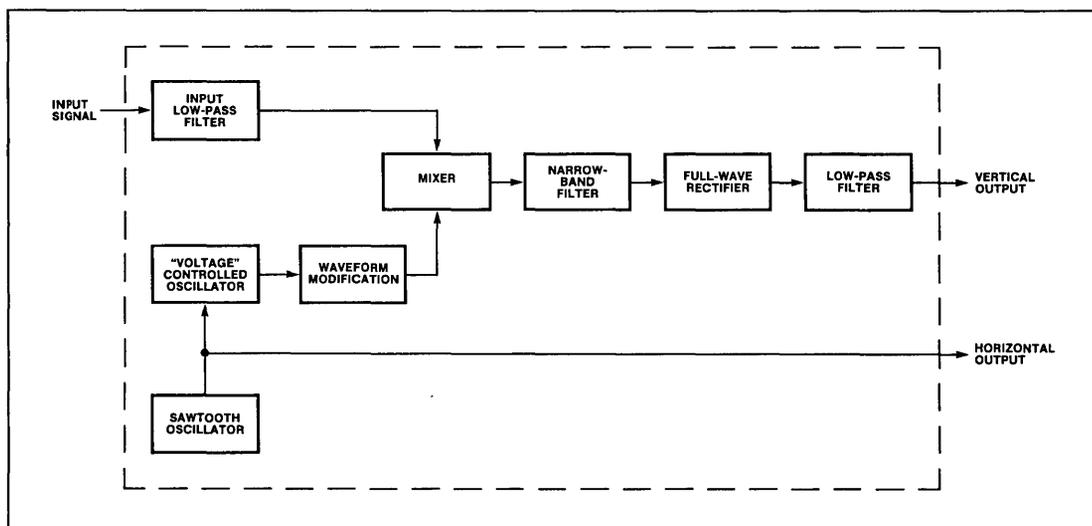


Figure 7-10. Block Diagram of a Spectrum Analyzer

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

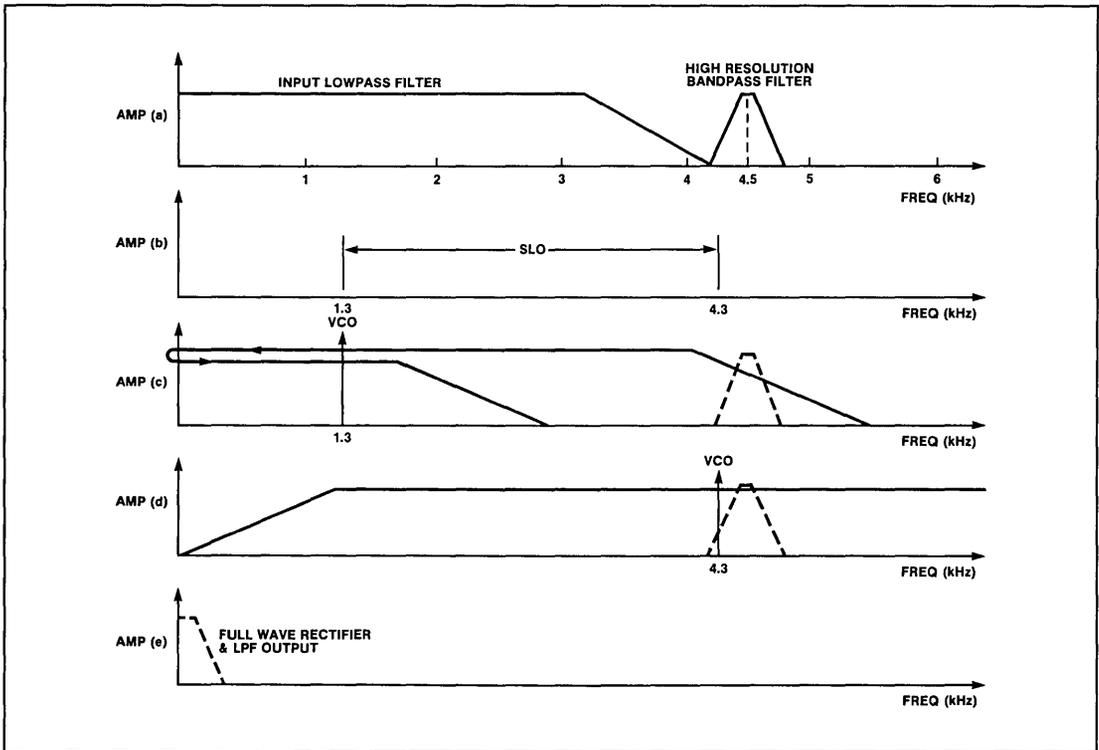


Figure 7-11. Spectrum Analyzer Design Frequency Domain Analysis

also be an input anti-aliasing filter, sample and hold, A/D converter, and the corresponding output D/A converter and reconstruction filter. The functions in the figure are implemented by the 2920 signal processor program.

### 7.4.3 Sampled Data System Considerations

An expansion of the frequency axis in Figure 7-11 to include the sampling frequency at 13 KHz shows the first order aliasing spectra as seen in Figure 7-12. From this figure the limitations and requirements for filter rolloff, bandwidths, and center frequencies become clearer.

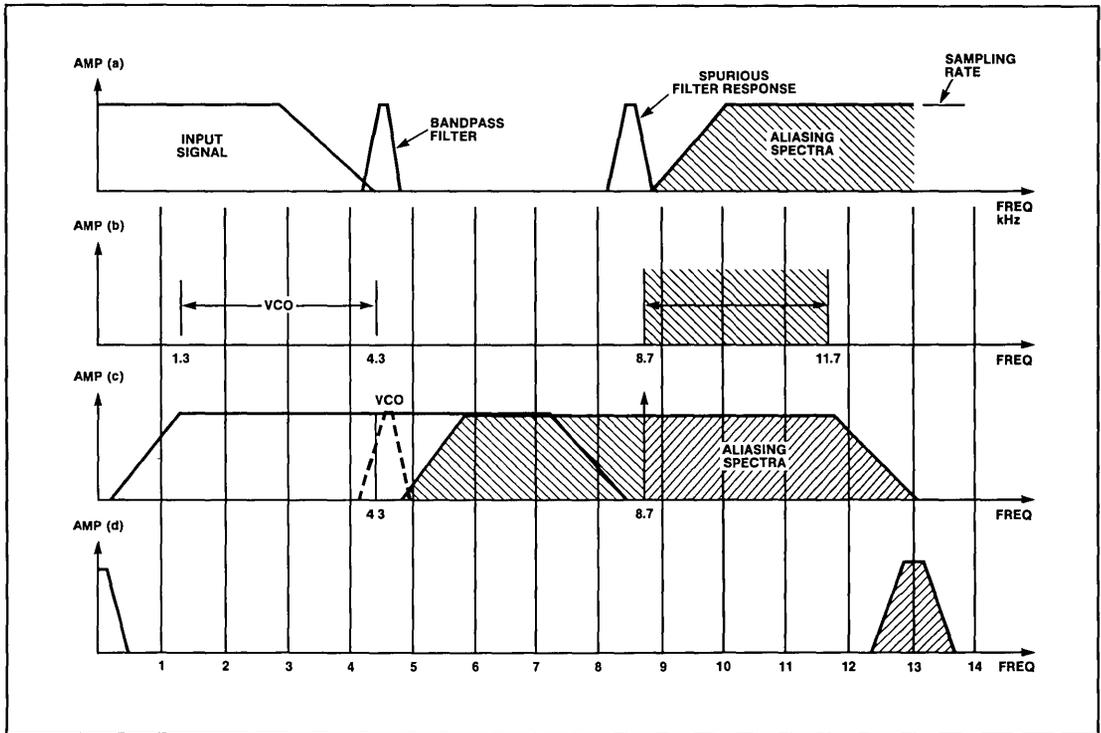
**Bandpass Filter**—The location of the bandpass filter is determined by the input lowpass filter bandwidth and rolloff (Figure 7-12a) and the aliased spectrum of the lower sideband resulting when the SLO is at 4.3 KHz (Figure 7-12c). The BPF must have enough rolloff to

eliminate both the baseband and aliased out-of-band signal components that are present. Analysis shows that a 3 pole Bessel filter will suffice if the input LPF is designed properly. The Bessel filter also has ideal transient response (no overshoot), so that the resulting output will not have overshoot and ringing.

**Input LPF**—This filter determines not only the baseband (centered about DC) spectrum but also that of the aliased lower sideband of the SLO. It was found that a 4 pole, 2 zero filter provides adequate rolloff to keep spurious signal (and aliased) components of significant amplitude (less than 48 dB down) out of the BPF passband.

**Output LPF**—This filter is used to remove the harmonic content of the FWR output (and the associated aliased components) before the signal is converted back to analog and output.

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES



**Figure 7-12. Aliasing Analysis of Aliasing Components**

**Anti-Aliasing Filter**—The basic requirement of the anti-aliasing filter is to assure that out-of-band input signal components at the filter output are at least 50 dB down (based on dynamic range specification of 49 dB) before entering the passband of the input digital lowpass filter shown in Figure 7-10. From Figure 7-12 it is evident that with a 13 KHz sampling frequency (corresponding to a full 2920 program and a 10 MHz clock), the aliasing components must be below  $-50$  dB at 3.2 KHz or 9.8 KHz from the sampling frequency. Therefore, the anti-aliasing filter attenuation characteristics are: relatively little rolloff by 3.2 KHz (1 dB) and 50 dB by 9.8 KHz. Filter curves readily available in the literature (see also Chapter 5) show that this would require a 5 pole 0.5 dB ripple Chebyshev, or equivalent.

Note that this filter is only needed if the input signal has significant frequency components above about 7 KHz. If a controlled signal is to be processed by the spectrum analyzer (such as sine waves or narrow-band signals), no anti-aliasing filter is needed.

### 7.4.4 Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing

The spectrum analyzer program listed in Figure 7-13 was coded in a structure form, with each functional block coded separately and the blocks arranged to follow the signal paths shown in the block diagram of Figure 7-10. This was done for clarity in describing the program. It is not necessary to implement the code one functional block at a time or in any specific order as long as the relationships between the inputs and outputs of the functional blocks remain unchanged. In fact, it is usually more efficient to program the 2920 in a less structured form. For example, because each functional block is executed in its entirety before proceeding to the next functional block, it was not possible to execute all input and output instructions simultaneously with digital instructions. To take advantage of the fact that analog and digital instructions can execute simultaneously, portions of the program could be rearranged, and these analog instructions combined with digital instructions, thus reducing the program length.

## APPLICATION EXAMPLES

The first functional block of the spectrum analyzer program is the 4 pole, 2 zero input filter. The sections titled Pole 1 and Pole 3 each represent a complex pole pair. The filter stage propagation is executed after the input signal is obtained. Stage propagation must be done before the complex zero pair can be implemented.

After the input filter program, the sweep waveform is generated to drive the VCO. This waveform is also inverted and delayed to form the horizontal output of the spectrum analyzer. The delay of 10 msec with respect to the VCO input compensates for the propagation delay of the bandpass and output filters. This delay is implemented in the time domain by simply subtracting a constant from the sawtooth waveform which corresponds to the change in amplitude of the waveform during a 10 ms period of time. The two NOP's which appear in the sweep oscillator sequence are part of the output sequence and are used to settle the D/A converter.

The VCO is implemented next. The sweeping sawtooth is set to zero at the beginning of each sweep so that the VCO output can be more easily observed with an oscilloscope. Once both the VCO waveform and the input signal have been obtained, they are multiplied together using the four quadrant multiply algorithm.

The signal from the multiplier (mixer) is then passed to the 6 pole bandpass filter. Portions of the output sequences for the VCO and linear and log response outputs are also executed at this time. Executing these sequences simultaneously with the digital instructions saves program steps.

The signal is then processed by the full wave rectifier and output lowpass filter. The output of this filter is the linear amplitude response of the spectrum analyzer. The

log amplifier is the final section of the program, and provides a log amplitude response output. All unused program steps are NOP's. The symbol table used by the assembler is shown in Figure 7-13, and a listing of the spectrum analyzer object code is given in Figure 7-14.

| Symbol: | Value: |
|---------|--------|
| TEMP    | 0      |
| IF11    | 1      |
| IF10    | 2      |
| IF31    | 3      |
| IF30    | 4      |
| MPL2    | 5      |
| S1      | 6      |
| M       | 7      |
| F1      | 8      |
| SWP     | 9      |
| F2      | 10     |
| S2      | 11     |
| OSC1    | 12     |
| OSC     | 13     |
| MPL1    | 14     |
| BP11    | 15     |
| BP10    | 16     |
| BP31    | 17     |
| BP30    | 18     |
| Y0      | 19     |
| BP51    | 20     |
| BP50    | 21     |
| LOUT    | 22     |
| Y2      | 23     |
| Y1      | 24     |

Figure 7-13. Spectrum Analyzer Symbol Table

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

ISIS-II 2920 ASSEMBLER X102

PAGE 1

ASSEMBLER INVOKED BY: AS2920 SPEC4 DEBUG

```

LINE  LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
  1    0 3066EB SUB DAR,  DAR,  ROO, IN3      ;CLEAR DAR FOR A/D CONVERSION
  2    1 3000EF IN3
  3    2 3000EF IN3
  4    3 3000EF IN3
  5    4 3000EF IN3
  6    5 3000EF IN3
  7    6 4000EF NOP
  8    7 4000EF NOP
  9    8 6000EF CVTS
 10    9 EBE6ED ADD DAR,  KM2,  ROO, CND6     ;A/D CONVERSION INSTRUCTION
 11   10 4000EF NOP
 12   11 4000EF NOP
 13   12 7100EF CVT7
 14   13 4000EF NOP
 15
 16           ;*****INPUT FILTER*****
 17
 18           ;POLE 1
 19   14 400BEF LDA TEMP,  IF11, ROO,  NOP
 20   15 6300FF LDA IF11,  IF10, ROO,  CVT6
 21   16 46002A SUB IF10,  IF10, RO2,  NOP
 22   17 4600AA SUB IF10,  IF10, RO6,  NOP
 23   18 57000D ADD IF10,  IF10, RO9,  CVT5
 24   19 44002A SUB IF10,  TEMP, RO2,  NOP
 25   20 4400AC ADD IF10,  TEMP, RO6,  NOP
 26   21 45000D ADD IF10,  TEMP, RO9,  CVT4
 27   22 44002D ADD IF10,  TEMP, R10,  NOP
 28   23 44006B SUB IF10,  TEMP, R12,  NOP
 29
 30           ;POLE 3
 31   24 330BEF LDA TEMP,  IF31, ROO,  CVT3
 32   25 4C00FF LDA IF31,  IF30, ROO,  NOP
 33   26 40100F LDA IF30,  TEMP, RO9,  NOP
 34   27 21100A SUB IF30,  TEMP, RO1,  CVT2
 35   28 40104A SUB IF30,  TEMP, RO3,  NOP
 36   29 48106C ADD IF30,  IF30, RO4,  NOP
 37   30 131B4C ADD IF30,  IF31, RO3,  CVT1
 38   31 421B8A SUB IF30,  IF31, RO5,  NOP
 39   32 421BCC ADD IF30,  IF31, RO7,  NOP
 40   33 031B2D ADD IF30,  IF31, R10,  CVT0
 41
 42           ;STAGE PROPAGATION
 43   34 44224C ADD IF10,  DAR,  RO3          ;ADD INPUT TO INPUT FILTER
 44   35 4210ED ADD IF30,  IF10, ROO        ;GAIN=4.21/2**3
 45
 46           ;ZERO 5
 47   36 4810FF LDA MPL2,  IF30, ROO
 48   37 421BFD ADD MPL2,  IF31, ROO
 49   38 421B5C ADD MPL2,  IF31, RO3
 50   39 421BFC ADD MPL2,  IF31, RO8
 51   40 421B1D ADD MPL2,  IF31, RO9
 52   41 4010FD ADD MPL2,  TEMP, ROO        ;INPUT FILTER OUTPUT IN MPL2

```

Figure 7-14. Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

ISIS-II 2920 ASSEMBLER X102

PAGE 2

```

LINE  LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
53
54
55           ;*****SWEEP OSC*****
56
57
58 42 4C9A6F LDA S1,   KP5,  R12           ;DEFINE S1
59 43 4C92DF LDA M,   KP4,  L01           ;DEFINE M
60 44 4A40EB SUB F1,   S1,   ROO
61 45 4064EF LDA DAR, F1,   ROO
62 46 7A4BED ADD F1,   M,   ROO,  CNDS
63 47 4ACAF5 LIM SWP, KP7,  ROO
64 48 4060FB SUB SWP, F1,   ROO           ;INVERT SLOPE
65 49 406CEF LDA DAR, SWP,  ROO           ;SWEEP TO DAR TO OUTPUT
66 50 48CEBA SUB DAR, KP5,  RO5
67 51 7BC6CD ADD DAR, KP4,  L01,  CNDS     ;10 MS DELAY FOR FILTER RISE TIMES
68 52 44602E LDA F2,   F1,   RO2,  NOP     ;SAWTOOTH SCALING
69 53 4460AA SUB F2,   F1,   RO6,  NOP
70 54 46606B SUB F2,   F2,   R12,  NOP
71 55 4460EA SUB F2,   F1,   RO8,  NOP
72 56 4000EF NOP
73 57 4000EF NOP
74 58 86CA3E LDA S2,   KP3,  RO2,  OUTO     ;DEFINE S2
75 59 86CABC ADD S2,   KP3,  RO6,  OUTO
76 60 84CA1D ADD S2,   KP1,  RO9,  OUTO
77 61 8668ED ADD F2,   S2,   ROO,  OUTO     ;ADD OFFSET
78
79
80           ;*****VCO*****
81
82
83 62 8000EF OUTO
84 63 8270EB SUB OSC1, F2,   ROO,  OUTO
85 64 4864EF LDA DAR,  OSC1, ROO
86 65 7A5BED ADD OSC1, M,   ROO,  CNDS
87 66 4870FF LDA OSC,  OSC1, ROO
88 67 4A5B1A SUB OSC,  M,   RO1
89 68 4878D7 ABS OSC,  OSC,  L01
90 69 4A5B1A SUB OSC,  M,   RO1
91 70 4064EF LDA DAR,  F1,   ROO
92 71 70D2EF LDA OSC1, KP0,  ROO,  CNDS     ;SET VCO TO 0 TO SYNC WITH SWEEP
93 72 4878DD ADD OSC,  OSC,  L01           ;VCO OUTPUT IN OSC
94
95
96           ;*****MULTIPLY*****
97
98
99 73 4E70EB SUB MPL1, MPL1, ROO           ;CLEAR MULTIPLY OUTPUT REGISTER
100 74 486CEF LDA DAR,  OSC,  ROO           ;LOAD DAR WITH MULTIPLIER
101 75 FD580C ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO1,  CND7
102 76 ED582C ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO2,  CND6
103 77 DD584C ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO3,  CND5
104 78 CD586C ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO4,  CND4
105 79 BD588C ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO5,  CND3
106 80 AD58AC ADD MPL1, MPL2, RO6,  CND2

```

Figure 7-14. Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing (Cont'd.)

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

ISIS-II 2920 ASSEMBLER X102

PAGE 3

```

LINE  LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
107  B1 9D58CC ADD MPL1, MPL2, R07, CND1
108  B2 8D58EC ADD MPL1, MPL2, R08, CND0
109  B3 4818DB SUB MPL2, MPL2, L01          ; DEVELOP -Y
110  B4 7C5BED ADD MPL1, MPL2, R00, CND5   ; ADD -Y IF MULTIPLIER IS NEGATIVE
111
112
113          ; *****BAND-PASS FILTER*****
114
115
116          ; POLE 1
117  B5 4A28EF LDA TEMP, BP11, R00, NOP
118  B6 44D0FF LDA BP11, BP10, R00, NOP
119  B7 4A298E LDA BP10, BP11, R05, NOP
120  B8 4A29EB SUB BP10, BP11, R00, NOP
121  B9 40814C ADD BP10, BP10, R03, NOP
122  90 4081EA SUB BP10, BP10, R08, NOP
123  91 A001EB SUB BP10, TEMP, R00, OUT2    ; OUTPUT VCO SINE WAVE
124  92 A0018C ADD BP10, TEMP, R05, OUT2
125  93 A001CA SUB BP10, TEMP, R07, OUT2
126
127          ; POLE 3
128  94 A08BEF LDA TEMP, BP31, R00, OUT2
129  95 A2B1FF LDA BP31, BP30, R00, OUT2
130  96 A401AE LDA BP30, TEMP, R06, OUT2
131  97 4401EB SUB BP30, TEMP, R00
132  98 42CCEF LDA DAR, Y0, R00           ; LINEAR OUTPUT TO DAR
133  99 4681CA SUB BP30, BP30, R07, NOP
134  100 4489EB SUB BP30, BP31, R00, NOP
135  101 44894A SUB BP30, BP31, R03, NOP
136  102 44898A SUB BP30, BP31, R05, NOP
137  103 4489CC ADD BP30, BP31, R07, NOP
138
139          ; POLE 5
140  104 4880EF LDA TEMP, BP51, R00, NOP
141  105 C899EF LDA BP51, BP50, R00, OUT4
142  106 C0119E LDA BP50, TEMP, R05, OUT4
143  107 C0113D ADD BP50, TEMP, R10, OUT4
144  108 C011FB SUB BP50, TEMP, R00, OUT4
145  109 C899FC ADD BP50, BP50, R08, OUT4
146  110 C891FB SUB BP50, BP51, R00, OUT4
147  111 48915A SUB BP50, BP51, R03
148  112 4AC4EF LDA DAR, LOUT, R00       ; LOG OUTPUT TO DAR
149  113 4891BC ADD BP50, BP51, R06, NOP
150  114 48911B SUB BP50, BP51, R09, NOP
151
152          ; STAGE PROPAGATION
153  115 4A21AC ADD BP10, MPL1, R06, NOP
154  116 44816C ADD BP30, BP10, R04, NOP
155  117 42917C ADD BP50, BP30, R04, NOP
156
157
158          ; *****LOW PASS FILTER*****
159
160

```

Figure 7-14. Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing (Cont'd.)

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

ISIS-II 2920 ASSEMBLER X102

PAGE 4

```

LINE  LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
161  118 44B1FF LDA Y2,   Y1,   R00, NOP
162  119 E2C9EF LDA Y1,   Y0,   R00, OUT6
163  120 E4A19A SUB YO,   Y1,   R05, OUT6
164  121 E4A11B SUB YO,   Y1,   R09, OUT6
165  122 E4A13B SUB YO,   Y1,   R10, OUT6
166  123 EEB9FB SUB YO,   Y2,   R00, OUT6
167  124 E4A1FD ADD YO,   Y1,   R00, OUT6
168  125 4EB99C ADD YO,   Y2,   R05
169  126 4EB91D ADD YO,   Y2,   R09
170  127 4EB97D ADD YO,   Y2,   R12
171  128 4EB99D ADD YO,   Y2,   R13
172  129 4CB919 ABA YO,   BP50, R09      ;FULL WAVE RECTIFIER OPERATION
173  130 46B9FF LDA YO,   YO,   R00
174
175
176          ;*****LOG AMP*****
177
178
179  131 46B9F7 ABS YO,   YO,   R00      ;PREVENT PROCESSING OF NEGATIVE NUMBERS
180  132 4699AF LDA LOUT, YO,   L02      ;SECTION 6
181  133 4699AD ADD LOUT, YO,   L02
182  134 4699AD ADD LOUT, YO,   L02
183  135 46990C ADD LOUT, YO,   R01
184  136 46992C ADD LOUT, YO,   R02
185  137 42CCEF LDA DAR,  YO,   R00
186  138 B799AF LDA LOUT, YO,   L02,  CND3 ;SECTION 5
187  139 B793ED ADD LOUT, KP2,  R00,  CND3
188  140 BD9B8C ADD LOUT, KP5,  R05,  CND3
189  141 C799CF LDA LOUT, YO,   L01,  CND4 ;SECTION 4
190  142 C79BED ADD LOUT, KP3,  R00,  CND4
191  143 C7936C ADD LOUT, KP2,  R04,  CND4
192  144 D799EF LDA LOUT, YO,   R00,  CND5 ;SECTION 3
193  145 DD93ED ADD LOUT, KP4,  R00,  CND5
194  146 D7936C ADD LOUT, KP2,  R04,  CND5
195  147 E7990E LDA LOUT, YO,   R01,  CND6 ;SECTION 2
196  148 ED9BED ADD LOUT, KP5,  R00,  CND6
197  149 E7936C ADD LOUT, KP2,  R04,  CND6
198  150 F7994E LDA LOUT, YO,   R03,  CND7 ;SECTION 1
199  151 F7996C ADD LOUT, YO,   R04,  CND7
200  152 F7998C ADD LOUT, YO,   R05,  CND7
201  153 FF93ED ADD LOUT, KP6,  R00,  CND7
202  154 FD936C ADD LOUT, KP4,  R04,  CND7
203  155 4000EF NOP
204  156 4000EF NOP
205  157 4000EF NOP
206  158 4000EF NOP
207  159 4000EF NOP
208  160 4000EF NOP
209  161 4000EF NOP
210  162 4000EF NOP
    .
    .
    .
236  188 5000EF EOP
237  189 4000EF NOP
238  190 4000EF NOP
239  191 4000EF NOP
240          END

```

Figure 7-14. Complete Spectrum Analyzer Assembly Listing (Cont'd.)

# APPLICATION EXAMPLES

```
: 1800000F3F0F6F6FEFBF3F0F0F0FEFFF3F0F0F0FEFFF3F0F0F0FEFFE0
: 18001800F3F0F0F0FEFFF3F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFCE
: 18003000F6F0F0F0FEFFF6F6F6FEFDF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFBB
: 18004800F7F1F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF6F3F0F0FFFFBA
: 18006000F4F6F0F0F2FAF4F6F0F0FAFAF5F7F0F0F0FDF4F4F0F0F2FAA7
: 18007800F4F4F0F0FAFCF4F5F0F0F0FDF4F4F0F0F2DF4F4F0F0F6FB8C
: 18009000F3F3F0F0FEFFF4FCF0F0FFFFF4F0F1F0F0FFF2F1F1F0F0FA5D
: 1800A800F4F0F1F0F4FAF4F8F1F0F6FCF1F3F1F8F4FCF4F2F1F8F8FA50
: 1800C000F4F2F1F8FCFCF0F3F1F8F2FDF4F4F2F2F4FCF4F2F1F0FEFD2B
: 1800D800F4F8F1F0FFFFF4F2F1F8FFFDF4F2F1F8F5FCF4F2F1F8FFF0
: 1800F000F4F2F1F8F1FDF4F0F1F0FFFDF4FCF9FAF6FFF4FCF9F2FDFFCB
: 18010800F4FAF4F0FEFBF4F0F6F4FEFFF7FAF4F8FEFDF4FAFCFAFFF599
: 18012000F4F0F6F0FFFBF4F0F6FCFEFFF4F8FCFEF8FAF7F8FCF6CFD7E
: 18013800F4F8F6F0F2FEF4F6F0FAFAF4F6F0FAFAF4F6F0FAFAF4F6F0FEFAAB
: 18015000F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF8F6FCFAF3FEF8F6FCFAFBFC65
: 18016800F8F4FCFAF1FDF8F6F6F8FEFDF8F0F0F0FEFFF8F2F7F0FEFB49
: 18018000F4F8F6F4FEFFF7FAF5F8FEFDF4F8F7F0FFFFF4FAF5F8F1FA24
: 18019800F4F8F7F8FDF7FAFAF5F8F1FAF4F0F6F0FEFFF7F0FDF2FEFF1C
: 1801B000F4F8F7F8FDFDF4FEF7F0FEFBF4F8F6FCFEFFFFDF5F8F0FCE0
: 1801C800FEFDF5F8F2FCFDFDF5F8F4FCFCDF5F8F6FCFBDF5F8F8FCC1
: 1801E000FAFDF5F8FAFCF9FDF5F8FCFCF8FDF5F8FEFCF4F8F1F8FDFBA9
: 1801F800F4FCF5F8FEFDF4FAF2F8FEFFF4F4FDF0FEFFF4FAF2F8FEF9D
: 18021000F4FAF2F9FEFBF4F0F8F1F4FCF4F0F8F1FEFAFAF0F0F1FEFBBE
: 18022800FAF0F0F1F8FCFAF0F0F1FCFAFAF0F8F8FEFFFAF2F8F1FFFF94
: 18024000FAF4F0F1FAFEF4F4F0F1FEFBF4F2FCFCFEFFF4F6F8F1CFA79
: 18025800F4F8F9F9FAFF4F4F8F9F4FAFAF4F8F9FAFF4F4F8F9F9FCF59
: 18027000F4F8F8F0FEFFFCF8F9F9FEFFFCF0F1F1F9FEFCF0F1F1F3FD3F
: 18028800FCF0F1F1FFFBCF8F9F9FFFCF8F9F1FFFBF4F8F9F1F5FA18
: 1802A000F4FAFCF4FEFFF4F8F9F1FBFCF4F8F9F1F1FBF4FAF2F1FAFC15
: 1802B800F4F4F8F1F6FCF4F2F9F1F7FCF4F4FBF1FFFFFEF2FCF9FEFFB4
: 1802D000FEF4FAF1F9FAFEF4FAF1F1FBFEF4FAF1F3FBFEFEF8F9FFFCB
: 1802E800FEF4FAF1FFFDF4FEF8F9F9FCF4FEF8F9F1FDF4FEF8F9F7FDA5
: 18030000F4FEF8F9F9FDF4FCF8F9F1F9F4F6F8F9FFFFF4F6F8F9FFF797
: 18031800F4F6F9F9FAFFF4F6F9F9FAFDF4F6F9F9FAFDF4F6F9F9FOFCBA
: 18033000F4F6F9F9F2FCF4F2FCFCFEFFFBF7F9F9FAFFFBF7F9F3FEFD5A
: 18034800FBFDF9FBFBFCFCF7F9F9FCFFF7F9FBFEFDFCF7F9F3F6FC2A
: 18036000FDF7F9F9FEFFDFDF9F3FEFDFDF7F9F3F6FCFEF7F9F9FOFE1A
: 18037800FEFDF9FBFEFDFEF7F9F3F6FCFFF7F9F9F4FEFFF7F9F9F6FCFC
: 18039000FFF7F9F9FBFCFFFFF9F3FEFDFDFDF9F3F6FCF4F0F0FEFFF9
: 1803AB00F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF39
: 1803C000F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF21
: 1803D800F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF09
: 1803F000F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF1
: 18040800F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFDB
: 18042000F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFC0
: 18043800F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFAB
: 18045000F4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF90
: 18046800F5F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFFF4F0F0F0FEFF77
: 00000001FF
```

Figure 7-15. Spectrum Analyzer Object Code





# CHAPTER 8 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

## 8.0 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

### 8.1 2920 Debugging Procedures

After all aspects of the program have been tested under control of the Simulator, the designer programs the 2920 EPROM and plugs it into the breadboard. If it does not function as desired, troubleshooting must begin. This section outlines some basic procedures for debugging the 2920 and its environment.

**Where To Start**—The 2920 includes some useful digital outputs for many signal processing applications. These  $\overline{EOP}$ ,  $\overline{CCLK}$ , and  $\overline{OF}$  signals can be of great value during debugging phases.

Check that the required plus and minus 5 volt supplies appear at pin 18 and 12, respectively. A scope won't necessarily reveal if GRDD is connected, since scope ground and GRDD are the same potential. This also holds true for VSP and RUN. Check them also.

Look at  $\overline{CCLK}$ .  $\overline{CCLK}$  is the instruction execution rate clock, and its period should be one-sixteenth the crystal/clock rate at X1 and X2.  $\overline{CCLK}$ 's pulse width should be about one instruction cycle. If  $\overline{CCLK}$  is at or near GRDD potential almost all the time, check that there is a pullup resistor (and that it is connected properly). If  $\overline{CCLK}$  is still not working appropriately, it is likely that the master clock at X1 and X2 is not adequate.

For clock operation with crystal, a capacitor of approximately 15 pf is required between X2 and VBB. Stray capacitances must also be considered, i.e., the sum of all X2 capacitances to VBB should be no more than 15 pf, and X1 to X2 stray capacitance should not exceed 15 pf also. In general, good wiring practices will avoid any problems with the operation of a crystal.

Operating the 2920 with an external clock source requires some care. X1 and X2 should be driven with true-complement signals, and the circuit in Figure 8-1 is recommended. The key starting point for the 2920's high speed operation is the master clock. Timing requirements include a duty cycle of  $50 \pm 5\%$ , or better, and a rise or fall time of less than 5 nanoseconds. Voltage "high" levels should be greater than -1 volt, and "low" levels less than -4 volts. Rise and fall times should be measured between -1 and -4 volts. (TTL with  $V_{cc} = -5V$ .) If  $\overline{CCLK}$  is jittery or erratic, the problem is usually in the master clock.

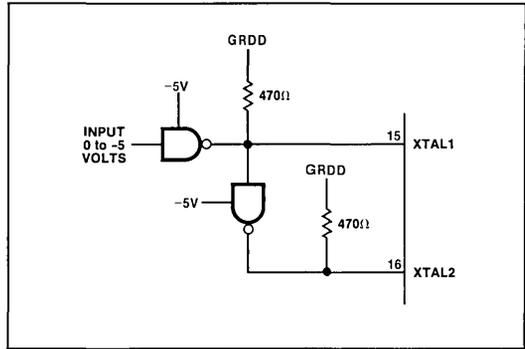


Figure 8-1. Driving From External Source

If the program results do not agree with simulation results, there are a number of things to review.

Noise on the VREF supply will contribute to many problems. In general, it is good practice to keep VREF noise to less than 4mv. Any noise greater than 4mv could cause A/D conversion errors, which can result in stability problems in digital filters. The same holds true for the GRDA pin.

Although the 2920 processes analog signals using digital techniques, the hardware designer developing a 2920-based product must always keep in mind that the device's primary interface is analog. In effect, standards applying to breadboard or printed circuit layout for analog circuitry still apply to 2920 environments. In general, special consideration to ground planes, guard rings, power supply bypassing, and digital isolation from analog signals are required to achieve optimal 2920 performance.

**Analog Ground Plane**—The GRDA and GRDD leads are not connected internally in the 2920. A connection outside the device is necessary to tie all analog ground lines to the common return of the system ground. That external GRDA to GRDD connection should be such that the GRDA connection is minimal impedance (a ground plane) to help minimize digital noise being induced into the 2920's analog section.

**Power Supply Bypassing**—In general, standard power supply bypass techniques for analog circuits should be used. The  $\pm 5$  volt power pins inside the 2920 are connected to both the digital and analog circuitry. Although the analog components exhibit good power

## DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

---

supply rejection, it is considered good practice to provide bypass capacitors for both high and low frequency components. The pins RUN, VSP, M1, M2 should be considered power supplies for layout considerations.

**Noise And Layout Considerations**—The 2920 pin configuration allows easy isolation of digital and analog signals in a PC board environment. The digital and analog signal lines should be on different sides of the PC board, and all analog signals to and from the 2920 are separated by the analog ground runs. This provides a stable (GRDA) level to minimize signal coupling, in effect, a shield. The two leads of the sample and hold capacitor should be “shielded” from each other by GRDA also, at both sides of the capacitor.

If the 2920 is to be used with an IC socket, pin-to-pin crosstalk must be minimized. Some popular IC sockets can exhibit as much as 40mv of crosstalk, with full scale signals which could seriously affect the integrity of the 2920's A/D and D/A conversions.

### 8.2 Description Of Application Breadboard

The 2920 Application Breadboard was designed for general purpose applications while maintaining a low noise system. The board is easy to assemble since it requires only a handful of components. The following description of the application breadboard may be enhanced by referring to the pin out description (Figure 8-2 and Table 8-1) and the schematic diagram (Figure 8-3).

For proper operation of the 2920, the required inputs are +5 volts, -5 volts, and a clock. The board provides lowpass filters at the power supply inputs and bypass capacitors at the voltage pins so that high frequency signals and voltage spikes will not enter into the chip. There are four multiplexed analog inputs and eight multiplexed analog outputs provided on the board. Pin 7 and 9 have a 500 pF sample and hold ceramic capacitor connected between them.

VREF (Pin 8) is the reference voltage needed for the A/D-D/A conversion. This voltage is provided by the output of a voltage following amplifier. It is important for proper A/D-D/A conversion that VREF remain constant and provide a noise free voltage source. To ensure a low noise DC output a shunt capacitor is located at the input of the op amp. Also a bypass

capacitor is connected between VREF and GRDA. The noise at the VREF pin should not exceed 4 mV. If it exceeds 4 mV, the noise will couple into the A/D-D/A converter and appear as noise on the signal. The input and output voltage range is  $\pm VREF$ , and VREF can be adjusted between plus one and two volts via a potentiometer.

Pull up resistors and test points are located at  $\overline{OF}$  (Pin 22),  $\overline{RST/EOP}$  (Pin 21), and  $\overline{CCLK}$  (Pin 19) to enable the user to observe the timing and overflow status of the 2920 while it is operating.

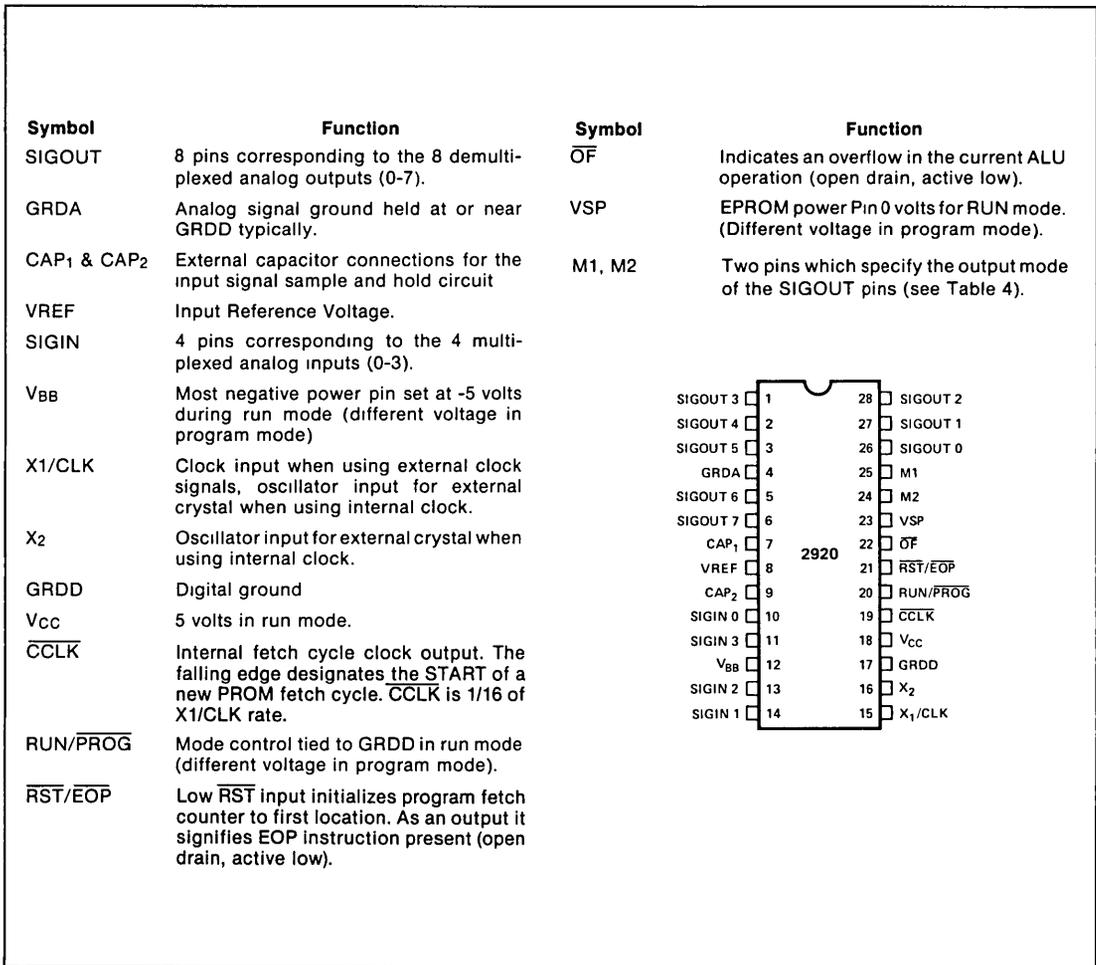
Since the 2920 is a sampled data system, it is necessary to band limit the input signals, SIGIN(K), to about  $\frac{1}{3}$  the sampling rate. If the signals are inherently band limited (e.g., sine waves), no filters are needed, otherwise the user must provide lowpass filters to bandlimit the signals before entering the 2920 signal processor.

#### 8.2.1 Layout Considerations

Some guidelines are offered in this section which were taken into consideration when designing the 2920 application breadboard. For the prototype board built at the Intel factory, a custom general purpose breadboard was used; however commercially available breadboards may also be used. In the parts list there is a recommendation for a commercially available breadboard. If a general purpose breadboard is used, the noise can be reduced by employing thick gauge bus wire for the power supplies and the grounds. The layout guidelines listed below will aid in realizing a low noise/low crosstalk circuit.

- a) Bypass the +5V and -5V power supply voltage with a 100  $\mu F$  capacitor and a .1  $\mu F$  ceramic capacitor with a 1-3  $\Omega$  resistor in series. This will reduce high frequency signals and voltage spikes from entering into the board from the power supplies. Make sure the voltage drop across the series resistance does not reduce the voltage at the 2920 power supply pins below specification.
- b) Separate digital signals from analog signals where possible to ensure a minimal amount of cross-coupling.

## DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS



**Figure 8-2. 2920 Pinout**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>c) Isolate the sample and hold capacitor from all signals to prevent noise from coupling into the chip.</p> <p>d) Use a separate digital and analog ground, and tie them together close to the power supply ground.</p> <p>e) Isolate the clock input from all other signals.</p> <p>f) Avoid ground loops and use heavy gauge wire for grounds and supply voltages.</p> <p>g) Keep the analog input and output leads short and separated.</p> | <p>h) Keep the clock wires short and use heavy gauge wire for the clock signals.</p> |
|---|--|

**Table 8-1. Output Mode For Signout Pins As Function Of M1 And M2**

| M1  | M2  | Signout Pins        |
|-----|-----|---------------------|
| 5V  | 5V  | 0-7 Analog          |
| 5V  | -5V | 0-3 Analog, 4-7 TTL |
| -5V | 5V  | 0-3 TTL, 4-7 Analog |
| -5V | -5V | 0-7 TTL             |



## DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

---

### 8.2.2 Parts List

|     |               |                       |          |
|-----|---------------|-----------------------|----------|
| IC1 | 2920          | Signal Processor      |          |
| IC2 | LM308AH       | Operational Amplifier |          |
| IC3 | 74S04         | Hex Inverter          |          |
| IC4 | LM336         | Reference Diode       |          |
| 13  | BNC           | Connectors            |          |
| 1   | 28            | Pin Socket            |          |
| P1  | 5K $\Omega$   | Potentiometer         |          |
| R1  | 1.0K $\Omega$ | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R2  | 1.5K $\Omega$ | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R3  | 3.9K $\Omega$ | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R4  | 100K $\Omega$ | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R5  | 62 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R6  | 10K $\Omega$  | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R7  | 10K $\Omega$  | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R8  | 10K $\Omega$  | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R9  | 10 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R10 | 10 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R11 | 10 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R12 | 10 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |
| R13 | 10 $\Omega$   | Resistor              | (Note 1) |

|     |             |                    |          |
|-----|-------------|--------------------|----------|
| C1  | 1.0 $\mu$ F | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C2  | 1 $\mu$ F   | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C3  | 500 pF      | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C4  | 1 $\mu$ F   | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C5  | 100 $\mu$ F | Tantalum Capacitor | (Note 2) |
| C6  | .1 $\mu$ F  | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C7  | .1 $\mu$ F  | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C8  | 100 $\mu$ F | Tantalum Capacitor | (Note 2) |
| C9  | 1 $\mu$ F   | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C10 | 1 $\mu$ F   | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |
| C11 | .1 $\mu$ F  | Ceramic Capacitor  | (Note 2) |

Breadboard custom made for Intel (Notes 3 and 4)

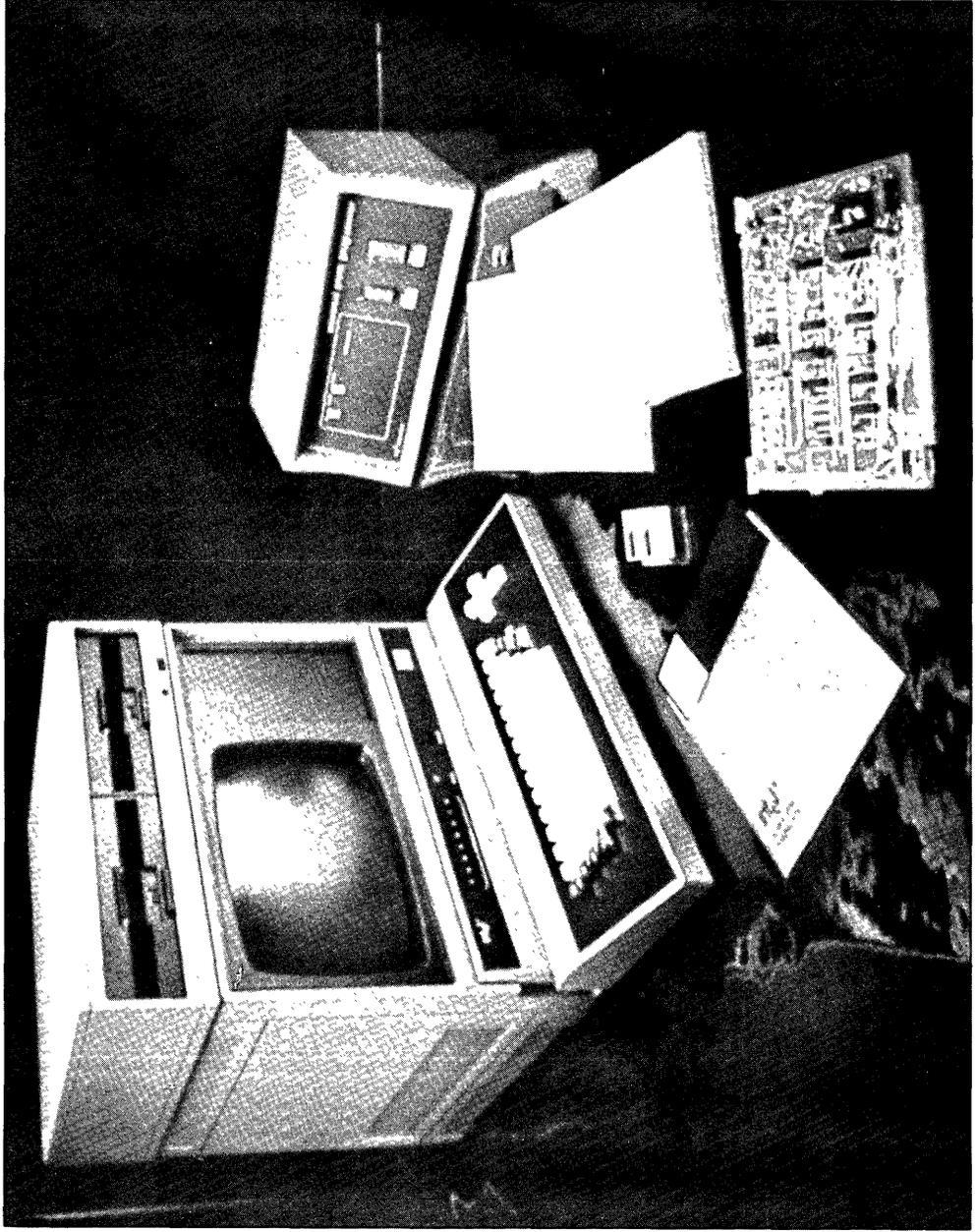
#### NOTE:

- 1) All Resistors  $\frac{1}{4}$  watt, carbon composite,  $\pm 10\%$ .
- 2) All Capacitors are non-polarized.
- 3) IC Breadboard substitute: Douglas Electronics, Inc. Part No. 22-DE-6
- 4) The breadboard should use 16-22 gauge bus wire for voltages and grounds (see layout considerations).





# THE SIGNAL PROCESSOR DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM



# CHAPTER 9

## 2920 SUPPORT TOOLS

### 9.0 2920 SUPPORT TOOLS

The 2920 Signal Processing Software Support Package (SPS-20) consists of the three powerful tools a designer needs in order to create signal processing products based on the 2920: the 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler, the 2920 Assembler, and the 2920 Simulator. These tools facilitate the implementation, verification and debugging of 2920 programs.

#### 9.1 The Assembler

The 2920 Assembler translates assembly language mnemonics programs into the machine code of the 2920 chip. The designer, usually working from a block diagram, creates 2920 assembly code routines for each functional block.

These routines are typed in to a diskette file, using the Editor under the Intel Systems Implementation Supervisor (ISIS-II) provided as part of the Intel Development System. Revisions to any part of the program or commentary text entered are easily made using this Editor.

After the program has been developed and edited into a form ready to test, the Assembler can be invoked.

The assembler translates 2920 mnemonics (such as ADD or L02 or IN3) into machine code. At the same time, it produces an object file and a listing showing each source line and the generated code, plus any detected errors. Its object output may be used by the EPROM programmer and the 2920 Simulator.

You can control the operations of the assembler with respect to most of its functions. This control may be exercised in the command invoking the assembler, or in control lines embedded in the source program.

The individual functions of this assembler are:

- 1) Symbol Table Management: keeping track of all symbols and their values and automatically assigning RAM locations to variable names as they are encountered.
- 2) Location Counter Management: keeping track of locations available for instructions and assigning locations for each instruction assembled.

- 3) Instruction Assembly: translating mnemonic opcodes and operands into their machine language equivalents.
- 4) Control and Directive Processing: noting and executing all controls, e.g., assembly listing and object output control, and directives such as symbol definition. This includes controls given as part of the invocation command.
- 5) Assembler Output Generation: creating the assembly listing, object code file, and error diagnostics.

A sample 2920 assembly listing is shown in Figure 9-1.

#### 9.2 The Simulator

The SM2920 Simulator is the software module which simulates operations of the 2920 device under control of the program to be stored in the EPROM.

The SM2920 software eases the testing and modification of 2920 programs. It does so by

- facilitating the use of symbolic references for displaying or changing all 2920 registers, flags, and user-named locations in program or data memory
- tracing, during simulation, the values of user-selected items chosen before starting simulation, enabling the programmer to see when and how signals are sampled and handled by a program

In general, the SM2920 module allows the user to

- load object programs from ISIS disk files
- define input signals as functions of time and processor variables or states
- establish halting conditions for each simulation
- create, display, and modify variable values and instructions
- simulate a program, including sampling the input signals as defined above, either one step at a time or in sequence, from zero or other user-specified addresses
- save tested or modified code into ISIS disk files

##### 9.2.1 Concepts of Simulation, Testing, and Debugging

After writing and assembling a 2920 program, there is a need to determine the performance of the implementation. Inputs must be specified, one or more instructions

## 2920 SUPPORT TOOLS

```
ISIS-11 2920 ASSEMBLER X102                                PAGE 1
ASSEMBLER INVOKED BY: AS2920 SAW ASM DEBUG
SAWTOOTH WAVE GENERATOR

LINE  LOC OBJECT SOURCE STATEMENT
1                                     #TITLE('SAWTOOTH WAVE GENERATOR')
2                                     ;
3                                     ;
4   0 0000EF      INO                ; SAMPLE INPUT CHANNEL 0
5   1 0000EF      INO
6   2 0000EF      INO
7   3 008AEB      SUB Y,KP1,INO      ; SIMULTANEOUSLY CALCULATE SAWTOOTH
8   4 008A0A      SUB Y,KP1,R1,INO  ; BY SUBTRACTING 3/16 FROM Y
9   5 0044EF      LDA DAR,Y,INO     ; ALSO CHECK SIGN BIT OF Y
10  6 7A8AED      ADD Y,KP7,CMS     ; IF Y NEGATIVE START NEXT TOOTH
11  7 6000EF      CYTS              ; CONVERT SAMPLED INPUT TO DIGITAL (SIGN BIT)
12  8 7082EF      LDA Y,KP0,CMS     ; SUPPRESS SAWTOOTH IF INPUT WAS < 0
13  9 4044EF      LDA DAR,Y        ; PREPARE TO OUTPUT SAWTOOTH
14 10 4000EF      NOP                ; ANALOG LEVEL MUST SETTLE
15 11 4000EF      NOP
16 12 4000EF      NOP
17 13 8000EF      OUTO              ; OUTPUT SAWTOOTH
18 14 8000EF      OUTO
19 15 8000EF      OUTO
20 16 5000EF      EOP                ; PROGRAM WILL END IN THREE MORE INSTRUCTIONS
21 17 8000EF      OUTO
22 18 8000EF      OUTO
23 19 8000EF      OUTO
24
25                                     END

SYMBOL:                                VALUE:
Y                                           0

ASSEMBLY COMPLETE
ERRORS   = 0
WARNINGS = 0
RAMSIZE  = 1
ROMSIZE  = 20
```

Figure 9-1. Sample 2920 Assembly Listing

simulated, and execution halted at a preselected location or condition, in order to review how the simulation is progressing. This controlled break in execution is called a BREAKPOINT.

The ability to review the values of key variables or the steps of the simulation, as they occurred prior to the breakpoint, is called tracing, i.e., collecting and displaying TRACE information. Similarly, it is useful to be able to display and alter data or instructions in any Random-Access-Memory (RAM) or Read-Only-Memory (simulated EPROM) locations, respectively. RAM is data memory and EPROM is program memory.

The 2920 Simulator provides all of the above capabilities. The use of symbolic names instead of numeric addresses further facilitates the process of program checkout by permitting the use, in debugging, of

the same names as were used in defining the problem and setting up the original assembler code.

### 9.2.2 Modes of Operation

The Simulator operates in two modes: Interrogation Mode and Simulation Mode. Interrogation Mode occurs whenever the Simulator is not actually simulating a program. This mode can be used to prepare the system for a new operation or to investigate the results of the last operation.

The 2920 program residing in memory is simulated during Simulation Mode. Trace data are collected and displayed during simulation. Breakpoints set under Interrogation Mode can include a number of different combinations of conditions. When these conditions are

met, simulation halts and the Simulator reverts to Interrogation Mode. At this time the contents of any memory location, processor register, or the trace buffer can be displayed.

### 9.2.3 A Generalized Simulation Session

The following steps are typical of many simulation sessions. Not every session requires all the procedures given here, but the main outline is the same in most.

- a) Initialize the system by bringing up the Intel Systems Implementation Supervisor (ISIS-II). After getting the hyphen prompt character from ISIS-II (-), enter the SM2920 command and obtain the asterisk prompt (\*) from the Simulator. This indicates readiness to accept any command.
- b) Use the LOAD command to bring the program to be simulated into the simulator's working space.
- c) In Interrogation Mode, prepare the system for simulation by defining symbols and setting simulation breakpoints and trace qualifiers.

The breakpoint and qualifier are the Simulator's "pseudo-registers." If execution matches the condition in the breakpoint register, simulation halts. While execution matches the conditions in the trace qualifier, trace data collection is enabled and runs whenever simulation runs.

- d) Specify the input signals to be simulated, as functions of time or other variables.
- e) Enter a SIMULATE command to begin simulation. Trace data will be displayed as they are collected, if CONSOLE is ON.
- f) When simulation halts, redisplay the trace data collected during that simulation, using the appropriate commands to position the trace buffer pointer to the information needed for review. One, several, or all entries can be displayed.
- g) While in Interrogation Mode (simulation halted), examine or alter 2920 memory locations or registers, I/O ports, or Simulator pseudo-registers, as needed. Patch in changes to the program code itself if required for program debugging or feature improvement. Display or change symbolic values in the symbol table if needed for further validation.
- h) Alternate between interrogation and simulation until current testing is complete.
- i) Use the SAVE command to store debugged code on an ISIS-II disk file, including the symbol table if desired.

Another session may be started immediately, resetting all parameters to their initial values by a few simple commands, or return to ISIS-II can be done using the EXIT command.

The Simulator also contains detailed HELP messages for commands and syntax.

A sample 2920 simulator session is shown in Figure 9-2.

```

-SM2920
*LIST SAV LOG      ; SAVE OUTPUT FROM THIS SESSION IN LOG FILE
*LOAD SAV HEX      ; LOAD SMOOTH GENERATOR ASSEMBLED WITH A62920
*ROM 0 TO 5        ; EXAMINE FIRST PART OF PROGRAM
ROM 000 = LDA Y, Y,ROO,INO
ROM 001 = LDA Y, Y,ROO,INO
ROM 002 = LDA Y, Y,ROO,INO
ROM 003 = SUB Y,KP1,ROO,INO
ROM 004 = SUB Y,KP1,RO1,INO
ROM 005 = LDA DAR, Y,ROO,INO
*INO = SIN(4000*TIME) ; SPECIFY INPUT SIGNAL TO BE SIMULATED
*QUALIFIER = PC=0    ; COLLECT TRACE ONLY ONCE PER PROGRAM PASS
*TRACE = TIME, INO, OUTO ; TRACE THESE THREE ITEMS
*SIMULATE FROM 0 TILL TIME>TPI/4000 ; SIMULATE FOR A WHILE

      TIME      INO      OUTO
SIMULATION BEGUN
0 00009600      0 37463213      0.25000000
0 00019200      0 69469800      0.06250000
0 00028800      0 91257910      0.75000000
0 00038400      0 99939463      0.56250000
0 00048000      0 93964551      0.37500000
0 00057600      0 74303413      0.18750000
0 00067200      0 43819771      0.00000000
0 00076800      0 06933646      0.68750000
0 00086400     -0 30925317      0.00000000
0 00096000     -0 64299893      0.00000000
0 00105600     -0 88308994      0.00000000
0 00115200     -0 99455645      0.00000000
0 00124800     -0 96116289      0.00000000
0 00134400     -0 78777319      0.00000000
0 00144000     -0 49964165      0.00000000
0 00153600     -0 13873627      0.00000000
SIMULATION TERMINATED
* ; PROGRAM WORKS
*EXIT
    
```

Figure 9-2. Sample 2920 Simulation Session

## 9.3 The 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler

The 2920 Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler (SPAS-20) aids the early design process by facilitating interactive development of digital filters and other signal processing functions. Automatic code generation can be requested. The Compiler selects the best program fitting designer constraints on the code size, or error functions on gain, multiplier value, or pole or zero location variance.

The Compiler's file handling, graphics, and extended macro capabilities make it easy to generate, test, and save generated code. Macro capability enables the designer to implement more complex commands by grouping sets of commonly used commands into a macro. Simple examples would include arithmetic routines to multiply or divide any two numbers given as parameters to the macro, or a routine to create a

sawtooth oscillator of varying slope. When such code is needed, it can be generated with one call to the macro along with the appropriate parameters.

The Compiler makes it easy to specify signal processing functions in a modular manner and to join the resulting code modules into larger programs. One important application is the development of digital filters, and the SPAS20 Compiler contains a number of features relevant to their design.

The Compiler operates interactively, permitting the designer to

- set sampling rate, place poles and zeros at chosen S-plane or Z-plane coordinates, and set error bounds on gain
- see immediately, on a graph or list, the frequency or time response of existing poles and zeros at specified frequencies, or display any design parameter
- generate, store, and review 2920 assembly language code for each filter or stage, or other signal processing functions
- use diskette files as scratchpads to store, review, modify, and retrieve files of parameters, code, or commentary
- create sequences of commands pertinent to complex or frequently used functions as macros, naming and storing them on diskette files for ease of future use, facilitating later interactive design sessions or unattended test sessions.

The Signal Processing Applications Software/Compiler accepts high-level language input and produces 2920 assembly language, as described above. The Compiler is also a filter design aid which permits substantial interactive manipulation of a wide variety of parameters and constraints, both in design of digital filter stages and in optimization of the 2920 code in terms of size and error limits. One principal feature allows specification of the poles and zeros of a desired filter and, after designer review of the pertinent graphs, the automatic implementation of that filter in 2920 assembly code, without having to write each of the detailed steps that are required in assembly language.

**Concepts of Filter Design**—Designing a filter involves choosing operations to perform on signals in order to produce modified signals. These operations are

usually (but not always) linear. The theory relating continuous analog filters to sampled digital filters appears in Chapter 5.

Filters are usually designed to achieve certain gain and phase characteristics, which can be viewed as resulting from the location of the filter's poles and zeros. The desired output amplitude and phase can be approached in an interactive design session by placing poles and zeros in the S-plane (for continuous filters) or the Z-plane (for sampled filters), and viewing the resultant output. Moving these poles and zeros can then change that output to more closely approximate what is needed. The Compiler capabilities facilitate this interactive process of specification, modification, and review by providing simple commands and graphs for these functions.

**Displaying Responses**—Frequency and time responses of the filter can be examined as the positions of poles and zeros are manipulated. The gain, phase, group delay, and step or impulse responses can be graphed or listed. The frequency range of interest for these outputs can be specified. While emphasis is placed on the gain versus frequency response of the filter, designers can take advantage of the compound command capability to use the phase, impulse, or step responses.

The graphs do not require the console device to have any cursor controls, e.g., the ability to move the beam directly by pressing a button for up, down, left, or right. The user specifies the X-axis and the Y-axis ranges. The last curve plotted is always available for redisplay upon entering the command GRAPH, regardless of the effect of intervening commands. It is also possible to superimpose the last curve plotted and a new curve, regardless of intervening scale changes. The graphs can be sent to a diskette file, or hard copies can be produced on a line printer, since no special cursor control characters are assumed.

**Generating Code**—Once the filter characteristics (e.g., gain, error, phase) look adequate to meet the design specifications, the user can generate the code for each pole or zero with a single command. The Compiler enables implementation of the filter as cascaded series of first and second order stages. It also supports the generation of code to compute independent variables of the form  $Y=C*X$  or  $Y=C*Y$ , where C is a constant, and

## 2920 SUPPORT TOOLS

X and Y are variable names. These equations are useful for propagation and scaling of the digital signal between stages.

These modules of assembly language code, for each pole or zero, can be accumulated into a file to be used as input to the 2920 Assembler. During code generation for one stage of a filter, it may be desirable to sacrifice a certain amount of numerical accuracy in order to get a shorter program. Towards this end, code generation, is performed subject to constraints which the user can specify. One such constraint consists of piecewise linear bounds on the gain, in decibels, as a function of frequency. The Compiler then strives to minimize the mean-square deviation from these bounds.

Before saving the resulting code into a file, designers can interactively adjust the number of instructions or the error constraint in order to achieve the shortest program with a tolerable error. This new code can then be saved into a file.

**Filing And Retrieving Code Or Parameters**—The process described above, of specification, display, and adjustment, is extremely interactive. The file commands have been structured to facilitate the restart of an inter-

rupted design or test session. They also make it easy to accumulate, into one or many files, the partial results of specifying parameters or creating code. Parameter files saved from an interrupted design session can then be included at a later date, to resume that design session with all relevant variables restored to their condition at the time the session was interrupted.

**Compound Commands**—SPAS20 contains macro and compound command facilities which enable multiple and conditional execution of command sequences, including substitution of varying parameters. These capabilities enable users to extend the language itself by defining their own commands and constructs.

Such macros make it possible, for example, to define an iterative process of moving poles and zeros and graphing the resultant response without having to type all the commands during each iteration of that process. Conditional code generation and display could be included in such a procedure. Macros and compound commands are interruptable at any time via the console ESCape key, should error or time constraints make that desirable.

A sample SPAS20 session is shown in Figure 9-3.

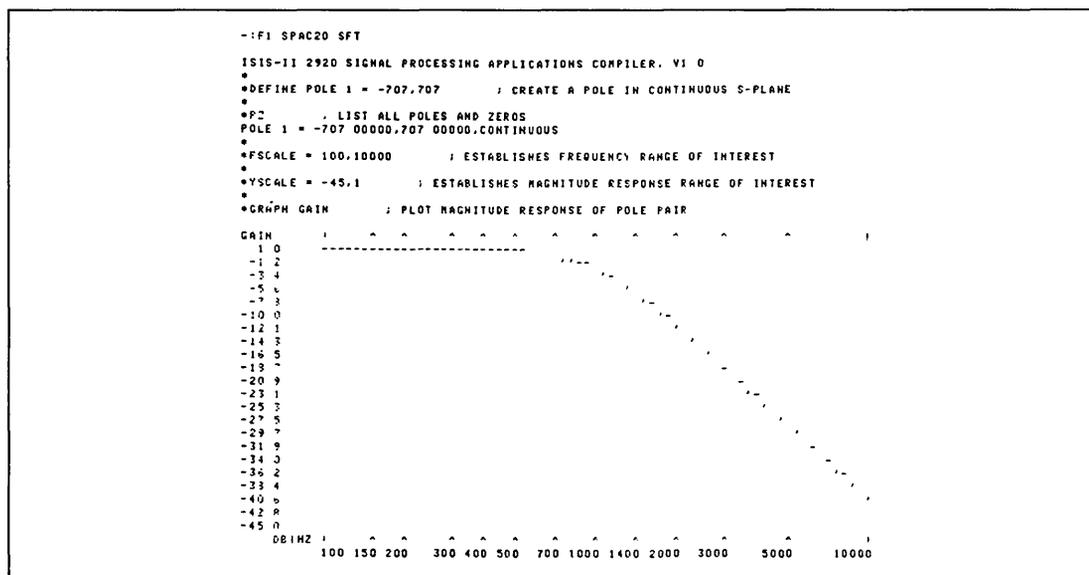


Figure 9-3. Sample SPAS20 Session



## 2920 SUPPORT TOOLS

```

      * OPTIMIZED 2920 CODE IS NOW GENERATED TO SAVE SPACE, SOME
      * OF THE SCREEN OUTPUT HAS BEEN DELETED NORMALLY ALL ATTEMPTS
      * BY THE COMPILER TO GENERATE CODE ARE ECHOED ON THE SCREEN *

INST=10
POLE 1 = 0 71089458,0 34116779,2
BEST: PERROR = 3 3795874/10**5,1 58846567/10**5

; NOTE: MAKE SURE SIGNAL IS <0 74635571
LDA OUT2.P1,OUT1.P1,R00
  OUT2.P1=1 00000000*OUT1.P1
LDA OUT1.P1,OUT0.P1,R00
  OUT1.P1=1 00000000*OUT0.P1
SUB OUT0.P1,OUT1.P1,R05
  OUT0.P1=1 00000000*OUT0.P1-0 031250000*OUT1.P1
ADD OUT0.P1,OUT0.P1,R03
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1-0 035156250*OUT1.P1
ADD OUT0.P1,OUT1.P1,R02
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1
SUB OUT0.P1,OUT2.P1,R01
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1-0 50000000*OUT2.P1
SUB OUT0.P1,OUT2.P1,R08
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1-0 50390625*OUT2.P1
ADD OUT0.P1,OUT2.P1,R11
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1-0 50341796*OUT2.P1
SUB OUT0.P1,OUT2.P1,R09
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1-0 50537109*OUT2.P1
ADD OUT0.P1,INO.P1,R00
  OUT0.P1=1 12500000*OUT0.P1+0 21484375*OUT1.P1-0 50537109*OUT2.P1+1 00000000*INO.P1
*
* THE CODE COMMAND SPECIFIED THAT THE POLE PAIR BE CODED IN LESS THAN 11
* INSTRUCTIONS, SO 10 INSTRUCTIONS WERE GENERATED, WITH COMMENTS
* THE FINAL ERROR IN RADIUS AND ANGLE FOR THE POLE PAIR WAS OF THE
* ORDER OF 1/10**5 AS INDICATED ABOVE IN PERROR
* THIS OPTIMIZED 2920 ASSEMBLY CODE CAN NOW BE APPENDED TO A FILE
* WHICH MAY CONTAIN OTHER CODED FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS OF A 2920 PROGRAM
*
*EXIT
```

Figure 9-3. Sample SPAS20 Session (Cont'd.)







## APPENDIX

---

### EVALUATING 2920 APPLICATIONS

#### POTENTIAL APPLICATIONS CAN BE DIVIDED INTO THREE CATEGORIES

Those which the 2920 can definitely do.

Those which it definitely cannot do.  
(50 kHz BW, or 90 dB Dynamic Range)

Those which fall into a gray area.

For many applications, the 2920 can either definitely be used, or definitely not be used. However, sometimes it is not clear whether a potential application can be done by the 2920. Some examples which fall into this gray area are those applications where complexity/bandwidth constraints can't quite be met, but it might be possible to sacrifice on one constraint to meet the other. Or those applications where a very detailed analysis would have to be made, and a prototype program actually written to determine applicability of the 2920. In many cases where an entire application, as specified by the customer, cannot be done with one 2920, part of it could be done, reducing costs and component count sufficiently to give the 2920 an advantage over another solution.

#### QUESTIONS TO ASK YOURSELF WHEN EVALUATING A POSSIBLE 2920 APPLICATION

Is 2920 dynamic range adequate?

The dynamic range will be 6 dB/Bit for a total of 54 dB with a 9-bit conversion.

Does the bandwidth needed by the application under consideration fall within the range the 2920 can handle?

Nominally 0-10 kHz, and up to about 15 kHz.

Will the program length which is required to obtain the desired bandwidth allow for the implementation of the desired function or functions?

Will 40 RAM locations be enough?

Can the 2920 handle the I/O requirements with its 4 input and 8 output channels?

# APPENDIX

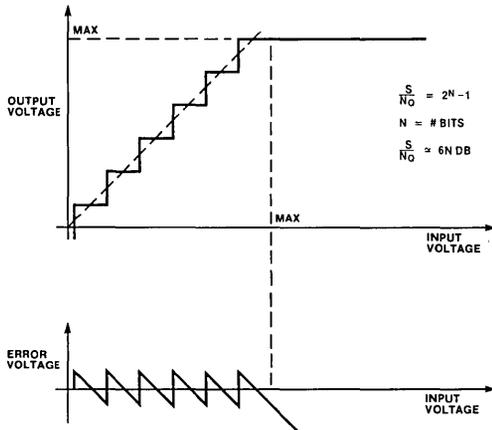
## DYNAMIC RANGE

- Dynamic range is defined as the ratio of the peak signal to the smallest detectable signal.
- Determined by the number of bits of the A/D conversion.
- A 9-bit A/D corresponds to a 54 dB dynamic range.
  - So, for a threshold detection with the 2920, for example, there will be a 54 dB dynamic range (max.)
  - However, if an application requires a minimum SNR<sub>Q</sub> for processing, then the total signal range will be:

$$54 \text{ dB} - \text{SNR}_Q$$

where SNR<sub>Q</sub> is the minimum signal to quantization noise ratio that is acceptable.

## QUANTIZATION NOISE



|                     |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| BITS                | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 |
| S/N <sub>Q</sub> DB | 11 | 18 | 24 | 30 | 36 | 42 | 48 | 54 | 60 | 66 |

## APPENDIX

### BANDWIDTH vs. PROGRAM LENGTH

| Program Length |     | Sample*<br>Rate | Signal**<br>3dB Bandwidth |
|----------------|-----|-----------------|---------------------------|
| Inst.          | %   |                 |                           |
| 192            | 100 | 13 kHz          | 4.3 kHz                   |
| 152            | 79  | 16 kHz          | 5.3 kHz                   |
| 116            | 60  | 22 kHz          | 7.3 kHz                   |
| 76             | 40  | 32 kHz          | 10.7 kHz                  |
| 40             | 21  | 62 kHz          | 20.7 kHz                  |

\*Assumes 10MHz clock rate. Sample rate =  $\frac{1}{(\# \text{ Inst}) (400 \times 10^{-9})}$  Hz

\*\*Assume BW 3dB -1/2 (Sample rate)

The number of instructions, and the clock rate, will determine the sample rate, and hence the signal bandwidth for a given 2920 application. Because of the restriction on the placement of the EOP instruction, program lengths will always be a multiple of 4. A typical program length of from 80 to 192 instructions will yield a bandwidth in the range of DC-10kHz.

### BANDWIDTH

Nominally DC to 10kHz.

Signals up to 15kHz.

For higher complexity and bandwidth, 2920's can be cascaded or operated in parallel.

$$\text{Speed} \propto \left( \frac{\text{Program Length}}{\text{Device}} \right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{L}$$

$$\text{Complexity} \propto \text{Program Length} \times (\# \text{ Devices}) = L \times n$$

$$\text{Performance} \propto \text{Speed} \times \text{Complexity} = n$$

### EVALUATING A POTENTIAL APPLICATION

Customer: Word description of application.

Block diagram.

Break block diagram down further into basic 2920 functional blocks.

FAE: Determine number of instructions and RAM locations needed for these blocks and sum them up.

- Will it fit in the 2920?
- Will the resulting bandwidth meet requirements?
- Can the 2920 meet other requirements, such as dynamic range and I/O?

The shorter a 2920 program is, the higher the bandwidth which can be handled. The minimum length for a 2920 program is constrained by the I/O required. A full 9 bit input/output sequence will require approximately 48 instructions, yielding a sample rate of 52.1kHz, and hence a bandwidth of approximately 17kHz. If dynamic range requirements are not too strict, the input conversion sequence can be shortened by reducing the number of bits converted, and bandwidths up to approximately 20kHz can be achieved.

For high complexity programs with high sample rates, 2920's can be cascaded (I/O requirements will result in a minimum of about 48 instructions per device) or operated in parallel. For example, if two 2920's are cascaded and each is programmed to 50 percent of the maximum program length, each device will be sampling at 26kHz, yet a full 192 instruction program is being executed.

# APPENDIX

## WORKSHEET #1 2920 BUILDING BLOCK SUMMARY

| Function                            | Comments   | # Of Uses | # Of Inst's    | Total Inst's | # RAM       | Total RAM | DAR         |
|-------------------------------------|--|-----------|----------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 4 Quadrant Multiply                 | 9 Bit x 25 Bit<br>12 Bit x 25 Bit<br>16 Bit x 25 Bit |           | 12<br>18<br>26 |              | 2<br>3<br>4 |           | X<br>X<br>X |
| 2 Quadrant Multiply                 | 9 Bit x 25 Bit                                       |           | 10             |              | 2           |           | X           |
| Constant Multiply                   |  |           | 15             |              | 0           |           | X           |
| 4 Quadrant Divide                   | 9 Bit - 25 Bit                                       |           | 15             |              | 3           |           | X           |
| Complex Pole Pair                   |  |           | 7              | 12           | 3           |           |             |
| Complex Zero Pair                   | When linked with pole/separate                       |           | 5              | 10/12        | 1/3         |           |             |
| Full Quadrant Section               | Pole + Zero Pair                                     |           | 12             | 22           | 3           | 4         |             |
| Single Real Pole                    |  |           | 2              | 6            | 1           | 2         |             |
| Single Real Zero                    | When linked with pole/separate                       |           | 2              | 5/3          | 8           | 1         |             |
| 2 Cascaded Quadratics               | 2 Pole + Zero Pairs                                  |           | 24             | 44           | 6           |           |             |
| 3 Pole, 2 Zero Filter               | 1 Real and 1 Complex Pole                            |           | 14             | 28           | 5           |           |             |
| Sawtooth Wave Generator             |  |           | 3              | 7            | 1           | 2         | X           |
| Triangle Wave Generator             |  |           | 6              | 10           | 2           | 3         | X           |
| Sine Wave Generator                 | Trapezoidal Waveform (5% THD)                        |           | 8              | 12           | 2           | 3         | X           |
| SLO Sweeping                        | Sine Wave  |           | 11             | 20           | 4           | 6         | X           |
| VCO (voltage controlled oscillator) |  |           | 8              | 14           | 2           | 7         | X           |
| Limiter                             | Hard Limiter   |           | 1              |              | 1           |           |             |
| Full Wave Rectifier                 |  |           | 1              |              | 1           |           |             |
| FWR + Single Pole LPF               | Envelope detector                                    |           | 2              | 4            | 1           | 2         |             |
| Threshold Detector                  |  |           | 2              | 4            | 2           |           | X           |
| ALC                                 | Divide + LPF   |           | 15             | 19           | 3           |           | X           |
| Unit Delay                          | 1 Sample Period                                      |           | 1              |              | 1           |           |             |
| Subtotal                            |  |           |                |              |             |           |             |
| Overhead                            | 5 10%  |           |                |              |             |           |             |
| TOTAL                               |  |           |                |              |             |           |             |

The number of RAM locations needed for cascaded complex pole pairs is  $n + 1$ , where  $n$  is the number of poles. The number for cascaded quadratic sections (pole and zero pair) is  $n + 2$ . These formulas assume that some of the RAM locations can be used as temporaries, and shared between filter sections. This is normally the case, except for filters operating at a sample rate slower than the basic sample rate of the part.

## FUNCTIONAL EQUIVALENTS FOR 2920 IMPLEMENTATION

| Analog Function     | 2920 Equivalent Function                       | Comment                 |
|---------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Amplitude Modulator | Multiplier                                     |                         |
| Frequency Modulator | Voltage Controlled Waveform Generator          |                         |
| Amplitude Detector  | Absolute Value + LPF                           |                         |
| Frequency Detector  | Delay Line Discriminator                       |                         |
| Phase Detector      | Multiplier and LPF                             |                         |
| Unit Delay          | Transfer Data From One RAM Location to Another | (1 Sample Period)       |
| Mixer               | 4 Quadrant Multiplier                          |                         |
| Hard Limiter        | Automatic Level Control                        | Amplitude Normalization |
| Sine Wave           | Trapezoidal Waveform                           | 5% THD                  |

# APPENDIX

## 2920 INPUT/OUTPUT REQUIREMENTS

| Analog I/O Instruction     | Time Required | Instructions Required |       |        |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-------|--------|
|                            |               | Clock Rate            |       |        |
|                            |               | 1 MHz                 | 5 MHz | 10 MHz |
| IN(K)                      | 2400 ns       | 1                     | 3     | 6      |
| NOP's between converts     | 560 ns        | 1                     | 1     | 2      |
| NOP's after IN(K) sequence |               | 1                     | 1     | 1      |
| ADD DAR, KM2, ROO, CND6    |               | yes                   | yes   | yes    |
| NOP's after LDA DAR        | 2400 ns       | 1                     | 3     | 6      |
| OUT(K)                     | 3600 ns       | 1                     | 5     | 9      |

## WORKSHEET #2 I/O INSTRUCTIONS

| DATA                     |             |                     | CALCULATIONS |                    |                     |                          |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Conversion Accuracy      | Clock Speed | # Instructions/ I/O |              | # Input Operations | # Output Operations | Total # I/O Instructions |
|                          |             | Input               | Output       |                    |                     |                          |
| 9 Bits (54 dB)           | 10 MHz      | 33                  | 15           |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 5 MHz       | 22                  | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1 MHz       | 20                  | 2            |                    |                     |                          |
| 6 Bits (36 dB)           | 10 MHz      | 24                  | 15           |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 5 MHz       | 16                  | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1 MHz       | 14                  | 2            |                    |                     |                          |
| 1 Bit Serial Digital I/O | 10 MHz      | 6                   | 15           |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 5 MHz       | 4                   | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1 MHz       | 3                   | 2            |                    |                     |                          |

TOTAL \_\_\_\_\_

The number of instructions for an input sequence is equal to the overhead plus 3 instructions per bit for parts operating faster than 5 MHz and 2 instructions per bit for parts operating at 5 MHz and below.

## WORKSHEET #3 2920 FINAL WORKSHEET

|                    | 2920              | APP #1 | APP #2 | APP #3 | APP #4 |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Dynamic Range      | < 54 dB           |        |        |        |        |
| Bandwidth          | < 1/2 Sample Rate |        |        |        |        |
| # Instructions I/O | < 192             |        |        |        |        |
| Digital            | < 192             |        |        |        |        |
| # RAM Locations    | < 40              |        |        |        |        |
| # Inputs           | < 4               |        |        |        |        |
| # Outputs          | < 8               |        |        |        |        |

# APPENDIX

## EXAMPLE 1: MODEM

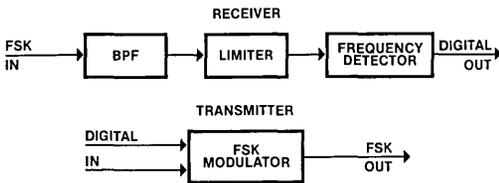
A modem application involves the transmission of digital data over a short length of transmission line at 1200bps. The modem will use FSK modulation and will send four frequencies,

- DC (Off)
- 900 Hz (End of Message)
- 1200 Hz (Mark, Logic 1)
- 2200 Hz (Space, Logic 0)

Because of the short distance of transmission, no delay equalizer will be necessary. Only a simple transmitter and receiver are needed. A 3kHz bandwidth will be adequate.

*Can this be done with the 2920?*

## MODEM BLOCK DIAGRAM (As Supplied by the Customer)



This is not sufficient because it does not identify 2920 building block functions.

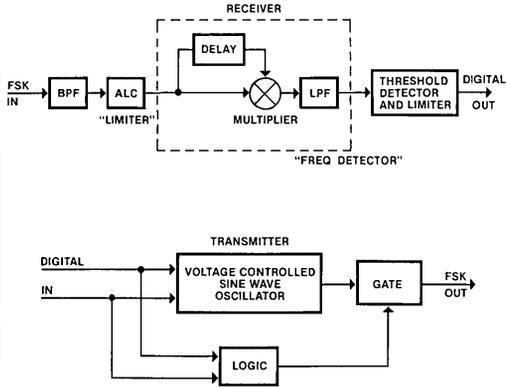
Further questions yielded the following diagram and block definition.

The modem FSK modulator will convert a serial digital input into a continuous analog FSK output which can be transmitted over a telephone line. Since four frequencies will be used — DC (off), 900 Hz, 1200 Hz, and 2200 Hz — two digital inputs will be required.

The modem receiver converts the FSK signal received from the telephone line into a serial digital bit stream. It converts the received frequency into a DC level, and then uses this level to derive a digital output corresponding to the bit which was sent by the transmitter.

# APPENDIX

## BLOCK DIAGRAM BROKEN DOWN INTO 2920 FUNCTION BLOCKS



The purpose of the limiter is to generate a square wave representation of the input signal which will contain the frequency information and provide a constant amplitude regardless of input signal level. This limiting is a nonlinear process and generates harmonics which will be reflected around the sampling frequency in a sampled data system. So, in the 2920, the signal level normalization is accomplished with an automatic level control, which will not add additional harmonic content to the signal.

## FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DETAILS (Supplied by Customer)

BPF:

$$F(s) = \frac{S^2(S^2 + A_0S + B_0)}{(S^2 + A_1S + B_1)(S^2 + A_2S + B_2)(S^2 + A_3S + B_3)(S^2 + A_4S + B_4)}$$

LPF:

$$G(s) = \frac{S^2 + A_0S + B_0}{(S + A_1)(S^2 + A_2S + B_2)(S^2 + A_3S + B_3)}$$

DELAY:

147  $\mu$ s (90° Phase Shift at 1700 Hz, the Modem Center Frequency)

THRESHOLD DETECTOR:

2 Detectors to Discriminate the 900 Hz, 1200 Hz and 2200 Hz Tones

Typically, filters will be specified as transfer functions in the S domain. The number of zeros can be determined from the numerator terms, and the number of poles from the denominator terms. Quadratic terms will, in general, represent a complex pole (zero) pair.

# APPENDIX

## 2920 FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS NEEDED

- BPF:** 4 Complex Pole Pairs  
 1 Complex Zero Pair  
 2 Real Zeros  
**LPF:** 2 Complex Pole Pairs  
 1 Real Pole  
 1 Complex Zero Pair  
**ALC:** Simple Pole Filter and Divide Algorithm  
**DELAY:** 2 Register Delay Line: Delay will be 147µs if Sample Rate is 13.6 kHz  
**MULTIPLY:** 9 Bit x 25 Bit (9 Bits are Adequate Because of 9 Bit A/D Conversion)  
 2 Threshold Detectors  
 Voltage Controlled Sine Wave Oscillator  
 1 9 Bit Input  
 2 Digital Inputs (1 Bit)  
 2 Outputs

## WORKSHEET #1 2920 BUILDING BLOCK SUMMARY

| Function                            | Comments   | # Of Uses | # Of Inst's | Total Inst's | # RAM | Total RAM | DAR |
|-------------------------------------|--|-----------|-------------|--------------|-------|-----------|-----|
| 4 Quadrant Multiply                 | 9 Bit x 25 Bit<br>12 Bit x 25 Bit<br>15 Bit x 25 Bit<br>9 Bit x 25 Bit | 1         | 12          | 12           | 2     | 2         | X   |
| 2 Quadrant Multiply                 |  |           | 18          | 18           | 3     | 3         | X   |
|                                     |  |           | 26          | 26           | 4     | 4         | X   |
|                                     |  |           | 10          | 10           | 2     | 2         | X   |
| Constant Multiply                   |  |           | 15          | 15           | 0     | 0         | X   |
| 4 Quadrant Divide                   | 9 Bit - 25 Bit   |           | 15          | 15           | 3     | 3         | X   |
| Complex Pole Pair                   |  | 6         | 7           | 12           | 60    | 3         | 18  |
| Complex Zero Pair                   | When linked with pole/separate   | 2         | 5           | 10           | 16    | 103       | 2   |
| Full Quadrant Section               | Pole + Zero Pair   |           | 12          | 12           | 3     | 3         |     |
| Single Real Pole                    |  | 1         | 2           | 2            | 4     | 12        | 2   |
| Single Real Zero                    | When linked with pole/separate   | 2         | 2           | 5            | 8     | 1         | 2   |
| 2 Cascaded Quadratics               | 2 Pole + Zero Pairs  |           | 24          | 24           | 4     | 6         |     |
| 3 Pole, 2 Zero Filter               | 1 Real and 1 Complex Pole  |           | 14          | 14           | 28    | 5         |     |
| Sawtooth Wave Generator             |  |           | 3           | 3            | 7     | 12        | X   |
| Triangle Wave Generator             |  |           | 6           | 6            | 10    | 23        | X   |
| Sine Wave Generator                 | Trapezoidal Waveform (5% THD)  |           | 8           | 8            | 12    | 23        | X   |
| SLO Sweeping                        | Sine Wave  |           | 11          | 11           | 20    | 46        | X   |
| vCO (voltage controlled oscillator) |  | 1         | 8           | 14           | 8     | 14        | 27  |
| Limiters                            | Hard Limiter   |           | 1           | 1            | 1     | 1         |     |
| Full Wave Rectifier                 |  |           | 1           | 1            | 1     | 1         |     |
| FWR + Single Pole LPF               | Envelope detector  |           | 2           | 2            | 4     | 12        |     |
| Threshold Detector                  |  | 2         | 2           | 4            | 8     | 2         | 4   |
| ALC                                 | Divide + LPF   | 1         | 15          | 19           | 17    | 3         | 3   |
| Unit Delay                          | 1 Sample Period  | 2         | 1           | 2            | 2     | 1         | 2   |
| Subtotal                            |  |           |             | 141          |       | 37        |     |
| Overhead                            | 5 10%  | 8%        |             |              | 11    | 11        | 3   |
| TOTAL                               |  |           |             | 152          |       | 40        |     |

To calculate the number of RAM locations for a filter which contains poles and zeros, use the formula for the cascaded quadratic sections, # RAM = n + 2, where n = # of poles (corresponding to the number of delay elements needed).

# APPENDIX

## WORKSHEET #2 I/O INSTRUCTIONS

| DATA                     |             |                     | CALCULATIONS |                    |                     |                          |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Conversion Accuracy      | Clock Speed | # Instructions/ I/O |              | # Input Operations | # Output Operations | Total # I/O Instructions |
|                          |             | Input               | Output       |                    |                     |                          |
| 9 Bits (54 dB)           | 10MHz       | 33                  | 15           | 1                  | 1                   | 48                       |
|                          | 5MHz        | 22                  | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1MHz        | 20                  | 2            |                    |                     |                          |
| 6 Bits (36 dB)           | 10MHz       | 24                  | 15           |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 5MHz        | 16                  | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1MHz        | 14                  | 2            |                    |                     |                          |
| 1 Bit Serial Digital I/O | 10MHz       | 6                   | 15           | 2                  | 1                   | 27                       |
|                          | 5MHz        | 4                   | 8            |                    |                     |                          |
|                          | 1MHz        | 3                   | 2            |                    |                     |                          |
| TOTAL                    |             |                     |              |                    |                     | 75                       |

## WORKSHEET #3 2920 FINAL WORKSHEET

|                    | 2920              | APP #1 Modem | APP #2 | APP #3 | APP #4 |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------|--------|--------|
| Dynamic Range      | < 54 dB           | 54 dB        |        |        |        |
| Bandwidth          | < 1/2 Sample Rate | 3 kHz        |        |        |        |
| # Instructions I/O |                   | 75           |        |        |        |
| Digital            | < 192             | 152          |        |        |        |
| # RAM Locations    | < 40              | 40           |        |        |        |
| # Inputs           | < 4               | 3            |        |        |        |
| # Outputs          | < 8               | 2            |        |        |        |

### TOTALS FOR THE MODEM

| RAM | DIGITAL INSTRUCTIONS | I/O INSTRUCTIONS |
|-----|----------------------|------------------|
| 40  | 152                  | 75               |

This corresponds to a sample rate of

$$F(s) = \frac{10 \text{ MHz}}{4} \cdot \frac{1}{152} = 16.4 \text{ kHz}$$

So the 13.6 kHz sample rate desire can be achieved.

THIS APPLICATION CAN BE DONE WITH ONE 2920.

Since some RAM locations used by one functional block can usually be reused by another, this estimate for the number of RAM locations needed is probably high.

Since I/O and digital operations are done in parallel, the longer sequence, I/O or digital, will probably determine program length. Since I/O will require only 75 instructions, all I/O can probably be done during the 152 digital instructions. The digital instructions then determine overall program length.

Conclusion:

This application can be implemented with one 2920.



## REFERENCES

- (1) "An Analog Input/Output Microprocessor for Signal Processing", M. E. Hoff, M. Townsend, *IEEE International Solid State Circuits Digest of Technical Papers*, Feb. 1979; Pg. 220.
- (2) "Single Chip NMOS Microcomputer Processes Signals in Real Time", M. E. Hoff, M. Townsend, *Electronics*, March 1, 1979, Pg. 105.
- (3) "First Single Chip Signal Processor Simplifies Analog Design Problems", Robert Holm, *Electronic Design*, Sept. 27, 1979, Pg. 50.
- (4) "Program a Spectrum Analyzer on a One Chip Real Time Signal Processor", Robert Holm, *Electronic Design*, Nov. 8, 1979, Pg. 70.
- (5) "Development System Facilitates Programming of Signal-Processor Chip", Charles Yager, *Electronic Design*, Dec. 6, 1979, Pg. 106.
- (6) "Implement Complex Analog Filters With a Real Time Signal Processor", Robert Holm, *EDN*, Nov. 20, 1979.
- (7) "Software Makes a Big Talker Out of the 2920", M. E. Hoff, Wallace Li, *Electronics*, Jan. 31, 1980, Pg. 102.
- (8) "An NMOS Microprocessor for Analog Signal Processing", M. Townsend, M. E. Hoff, R. Holm, *IEEE Journal of Solid State Circuits*, Feb. 1980.
- (9) "A Single Chip NMOS Signal Processor", M. Townsend, M. E. Hoff, IEEE—ICASSP, 1980, DSP 5.7.
- (10) "An Analog Microcomputer for Signal Processing", M. Townsend, M. E. Hoff, National Telecommunications Conference, 11/28/79, Session 25.
- (11) "An Analog Microcomputer", M. E. Hoff, M. Townsend, Wescon 1980 Processional Program, Session 16.4.
- (12) "A New Approach to Analog Design Using the 2920 Programmable Analog Signal Processor", Robert E. Holm, ED Design Series, June 1980.
- (13) "Modulation, Noise, and Spectral Analysis", Philip F. Panter, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1965.
- (14) "Digital Filters: Analysis and Design", Andreas Antoniou, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1979.
- (15) "Digital Signal Processing", William D. Stanley, Prentice-Hall, Company, 1975.
- (16) "Theory and Application of Digital Signal Processing", Lawrence R. Rabiner, Bernard Gold, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1975.
- (17) "Digital Signal Processing", Alan V. Oppenheim, Ronald W. Schaffer, Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1975.













3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel: (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## U.S. AND CANADIAN SALES OFFICES

### ALABAMA

Intel Corp.  
303 Williams Avenue, S W  
Suite 1422  
Huntsville 35601  
Tel (205) 533-9353

### ARIZONA

Intel Corp  
10210 N 25th Avenue, Suite 11  
Phoenix 85021  
Tel (602) 997-9695  
BFA  
4426 North Saddle Bag Trail  
Scottsdale 85251  
Tel (602) 994-5400

### CALIFORNIA

Intel Corp  
7670 Opportunity Rd  
Suite 135  
San Diego 92111  
Tel (714) 268-3563  
Intel Corp \*  
2000 East 4th Street  
Suite 100  
Santa Ana 92705  
Tel (714) 835-9642  
TWX 910-595-1114  
Intel Corp \*  
15335 Morrison  
Suite 345  
Sherman Oaks 91403  
Tel (213) 986 9510  
TWX 910-495-2045

Intel Corp \*  
3375 Scott Blvd  
Santa Clara 95051  
Tel (408) 987-8086  
TWX 910-339-9279  
910-338-0255

Earle Associates, Inc  
4617 Ruffner Street  
Suite 202  
San Diego 92111  
Tel (714) 278-5441

Mac I  
2576 Shattuck Ave  
Suite 4B  
Berkeley 94704  
Tel (415) 843-7625

Mac I  
P O Box 1420  
Cupertino 95014  
Tel (408) 257-9880

Mac I  
558 Valley Way  
Calaveras Business Park  
Milpitas 95035  
Tel (408) 946-8885

Mac I  
P O Box 8703  
Fountain Valley 92708  
Tel (714) 839-3341

Mac I  
1321 Centinela Avenue  
Suite 1  
Santa Monica 90404  
Tel (213) 829-4797  
Mac I  
20121 Ventura Blvd., Suite 240E  
Woodland Hills 91364  
Tel (213) 347 5900

### COLORADO

Intel Corp \*  
650 S Cherry Street  
Suite 720  
Denver 80222  
Tel (303) 321-8086  
TWX 910-931-2289

Westek Data Products, Inc  
25921 Fern Gulch  
P O Box 1355  
Evergreen 80439  
Tel (303) 874 5255

Westek Data Products, Inc  
1322 Arapahoe  
Boulder 80302  
Tel (303) 449-2620

Westek Data Products, Inc  
1228 W Hinsdale Dr  
Littleton 80120  
Tel (303) 797-0482

### CONNECTICUT

Intel Corp  
Peacock Alley  
36 Padanaram Road  
Danbury 06810  
Tel (203) 792-8366  
TWX 710 456 1199

### FLORIDA

Intel Corp  
1001 N W 62nd Street, Suite 406  
Ft Lauderdale 33309  
Tel (305) 771-0600  
TWX 510-956 9407

Intel Corp  
5151 Adanson Street, Suite 203  
Orlando 32804  
Tel (305) 628-2393  
TWX 810-853-9219

### ILLINOIS

Intel Corp \*  
2550 Golf Road, Suite 815  
Rolling Meadows 60008  
Tel (312) 981-7200  
TWX 910-651-5881

Technical Representatives, Inc.  
1502 North Linds Street  
Bloomington 61701  
Tel (309) 829-8080

### INDIANA

Intel Corp  
9101 Wesleyan Road  
Suite 204  
Indianapolis 46268  
Tel (317) 299-0623

### IOWA

Technical Representatives, Inc  
St Andrews Building  
1930 St. Andrews Drive N E  
Cedar Rapids 52405  
Tel (319) 393-5510

### KANSAS

Intel Corp  
9393 W 110th St., Ste 265  
Overland Park 66210  
Tel (913) 642-8080

Technical Representatives, Inc  
8245 Nieman Road, Suite 100  
Lenexa 66214  
Tel (913) 888-0212, 3, & 4  
TWX 910-749-6412

Technical Representatives, Inc  
360 N Rock Road  
Suite 4  
Wichita 67206  
Tel (316) 681-0242

### MARYLAND

Intel Corp \*  
7257 Parkway Drive  
Hanover 21076  
Tel (301) 796-7500  
TWX 710-862-1944

Mesa Inc  
16021 Industrial Dr  
Gaithersburg 20760  
Tel (301) 448-4350

### MASSACHUSETTS

Intel Corp \*  
27 Industrial Ave  
Chelmsford 01824  
Tel (617) 667 8126  
TWX 710-343-6333

EMC Corp  
381 Elliot Street  
Newton 02164  
Tel (617) 244-4740  
TWX 922531

### MICHIGAN

Intel Corp \*  
26500 Northwestern Hwy  
Suite 401  
Southfield 48075  
Tel (313) 353-0920  
TWX 810-244-4915

### MINNESOTA

Intel Corp  
7401 Metro Blvd  
Suite 355  
Edina 55435  
Tel (612) 835-6722  
TWX 910-576-2867

### MISSOURI

Intel Corp  
502 Earth City Plaza  
Suite 121  
Earth City 63045  
Tel (314) 291-1990  
Technical Representatives, Inc \*  
502 Earth City Plaza, Suite 201  
Earth City 63045  
Tel (314) 291-0001

Technical Representatives, Inc \*  
VSW Bldg Suite 560  
406 W 31st Street  
Kansas City 64111  
Tel (816) 756-3575

### NEW JERSEY

Intel Corp \*  
Raritan Plaza  
2nd Floor  
Raritan Center  
Edison 08817  
Tel (201) 225-3000  
TWX 710-480-6238

### NEW MEXICO

BFA Corporation  
1704 Moon N E., Suite 7  
Las Cruces 87112  
Tel (505) 523-0601  
TWX 910-983-0543

BFA Corporation  
3705 Westfield, N E  
Albuquerque 87111  
Tel (505) 292-1212  
TWX 910-989-1157

### NEW YORK

Intel Corp \*  
300 Motor Pkwy  
Hauppauge 11787  
Tel (516) 231-3300  
TWX 510-227-6236

Intel Corp  
80 Washington St  
Poughkeepsie 12601  
Tel (914) 473-2303  
TWX 510-248-0960

Intel Corp \*  
2255 Lyell Avenue  
Lower Floor East Suite  
Rochester 14606  
Tel (716) 254-6120  
TWX 510-253-7391

Measurement Technology, Inc  
159 Northern Boulevard  
Great Neck 11021  
Tel (516) 482-3500

T-Squared  
4054 Newcourt Avenue  
Syracuse 13206  
Tel (315) 463-8592  
TWX 710-541-0554

T-Squared  
2 E Main  
Victor 14564  
Tel (716) 924-9101  
TWX 510-254-8542

### NORTH CAROLINA

Intel Corp  
154 Hurlfman Mill Rd  
Burlington 27215  
Tel (919) 584-3631

### OHIO

Intel Corp \*  
6500 Poe Avenue  
Dayton 45415  
Tel (513) 890-5350  
TWX 810-450-2528

Intel Corp \*  
Chagrin Brainard Bldg., No 300  
28001 Chagrin Blvd  
Cleveland 44122  
Tel (216) 464-2736  
TWX 810-427-9298

### OREGON

Intel Corp  
10700 S W Beaverton  
Hillsdale Highway  
Suite 324  
Beaverton 97005  
Tel (503) 641-8086  
TWX 910-467-8741

### PENNSYLVANIA

Intel Corp \*  
275 Commerce Dr  
200 Office Center  
Suite 300  
Fort Washington 19034  
Tel (215) 842-9444  
TWX 510-661-2077

Intel Corp \*  
201 Penn Center Boulevard  
Suite 301W  
Pittsburgh 15235  
Tel (412) 823 4970  
Q E D Electronics  
300 N York Road  
Haltoro 19040  
Tel (215) 874-9600

### TEXAS

Intel Corp \*  
2925 L.B.J. Freeway  
Suite 175  
Dallas 75234  
Tel (214) 241-9521  
TWX 910-860-5617

Intel Corp  
6420 Richmond Ave  
Suite 280  
Houston 77057  
Tel (713) 784-3400  
TWX 910-881-2490

Industrial Digital Systems Corp  
5925 Sovereign  
Suite 101  
Houston 77036  
Tel (713) 988-9421

Intel Corp  
313 E Anderson Lane  
Suite 314  
Austin 78752  
Tel (512) 454-3628

### WASHINGTON

Intel Corp  
Suite 114, Bldg 3  
1603 116th Ave N E  
Bellevue 98005  
Tel (206) 453-8086  
TWX 910-443-3002

### WISCONSIN

Intel Corp  
150 S Sunnystope Rd  
Brookfield 53005  
Tel (414) 784-9606

### CANADA

Intel Semiconductor Corp \*  
Suite 233, Bell Mews  
39 Highway 7, Bells Corners  
Ottawa, Ontario K2H 8R2  
Tel (613) 829-9714  
TELEX 053-4115

Intel Semiconductor Corp  
50 Galaxy Blvd  
Unit 12  
Rexdale, Ontario  
M9W 4Y5  
Tel (416) 875-2105  
TELEX 06983574

Multitek, Inc \*  
15 Grenfell Crescent  
Ottawa, Ontario K2G 0G3  
Tel (613) 226-2365  
TELEX 053-4585

Multitek, Inc  
Toronto  
Tel (416) 245-4622  
Multitek, Inc  
Montreal  
Tel (514) 481-1350

\*Field Application Location



3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel. (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## U.S. AND CANADIAN DISTRIBUTORS

### ALABAMA

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
4812 Commercial Drive N.W.  
Huntsville 35805  
Tel. (205) 837-7210

†Pioneer/Huntsville  
1207 Putman Drive NW  
Huntsville 35805  
Tel: (205) 837-9033  
TWX: 810-726-2197

### ARIZONA

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
505 S. Madison Drive  
Tempe 85281  
Tel (602) 275-7851  
†Wyle Distribution Group  
8155 N. 24th Avenue  
Phoenix 85021  
Tel. (602) 249-2232  
TWX: 910-951-4282

### CALIFORNIA

Arrow Electronics, Inc  
9511 Ridge Haven Court  
San Diego 92123  
Tel: (714) 565-4800  
Arrow Electronics, Inc  
720 Palomar Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94086  
Tel. (408) 739-3011

†Avnet Electronics  
350 McCormick Avenue  
Costa Mesa 92626  
Tel: (714) 754-6111  
TWX: 910-595-1928

†Avnet Electronics  
4942 Rosecrans Ave.  
Hawthorne 90250  
Tel: (213) 970-0956

Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
1175 Bordeaux Dr  
Sunnyvale 94086  
Tel. (408) 743-3355  
TWX 910-339-9332

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
4545 Viewridge Ave.  
San Diego 92123  
Tel: (714) 571-7510  
TWX: 910-335-1216

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
10950 W. Washington Blvd.  
Culver City 90230  
Tel: (213) 558-2809  
TWX: 910-340-6364 or 7073

Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
3170 Pullman  
Costa Mesa 92626  
Tel. (714) 641-1850

†Hamilton Electro Sales  
3170 Pullman Street  
Costa Mesa 92626  
Tel: (714) 641-4100

†Wyle Distribution Group  
124 Maryland Street  
El Segundo 90245  
Tel: (213) 322-3826  
TWX: 910-348-7140 or 7111

†Wyle Distribution Group  
9525 Chesapeake Dr.  
San Diego 92123  
Tel: (714) 565-9171  
TWX: 910-335-1590

†Wyle Distribution Group  
3000 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara 95052  
Tel. (408) 727-2500  
TWX: 910-338-0451 or 0296

Wyle Distribution Group  
17872 Cowan Avenue  
Irvine 92714  
Tel: (714) 641-1611

### COLORADO

†Wyle Distribution Group  
6777 E. 50th Avenue  
Commerce City 80022  
Tel (303) 287-9611  
TWX: 910-931-0510

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
8765 E. Orchard Road  
Suite 708  
Englewood 80111  
Tel: (303) 740-1000  
TWX: 910-931-0510

### CONNECTICUT

†Arrow Electronics  
12 Beaumont Road  
Wallingford 06492  
Tel: (203) 265-7741  
TWX: 710-476-0162

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
Commerce Industrial Park  
Commerce Drive  
Danbury 06810  
Tel (203) 797-2800

†Harvey Electronics  
112 Main Street  
Norwalk 06851  
Tel (203) 853-1515  
TWX: 710-468-3373

### FLORIDA

†Arrow Electronics  
1001 N.W. 62nd Street  
Suite 108  
Ft. Lauderdale 33309  
Tel. (305) 776-7790

†Arrow Electronics  
115 Palm Bay Road, NW  
Suite 10, Bldg 200  
Palm Bay 32905  
Tel. (305) 725-1480  
TWX: 510-959-6337

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
6800 Northwest 20th Ave.  
Ft. Lauderdale 33309  
Tel (305) 971-2900  
TWX: 510-955-3097

Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
3197 Tech. Drive North  
St. Petersburg 33702  
Tel. (813) 576-3930  
TWX: 810-863-0374

†Pioneer/Orlando  
6220 S Orange Blossom Trail  
Suite 412  
Orlando 32809  
Tel: (305) 859-3600  
TWX: 810-850-0177

### GEORGIA

Arrow Electronics  
2979 Pacific Drive  
Norcross 30071  
Tel: (404) 449-8252  
TWX: 810-757-4213

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
6700 I-85 Access Road, No. 11  
Suite 1E  
Norcross 30071  
Tel (404) 448-0800

### ILLINOIS

Arrow Electronics  
492 Lunt Avenue  
P.O. Box 94248  
Schaumburg 60193  
Tel. (312) 893-9420  
TWX: 910-222-1807

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
3901 No. 25th Avenue  
Schiller Park 60176  
Tel. (312) 678-8310  
TWX 910-227-0060

### ILLINOIS (cont.)

Pioneer/Chicago  
1551 Carmen Drive  
Elk Grove 60007  
Tel. (312) 437-9680  
TWX: 910-222-1834

### INDIANA

†Pioneer/Indiana  
6408 Castleplace Drive  
Indianapolis 46250  
Tel: (317) 849-7300  
TWX: 810-260-1794

### KANSAS

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
9219 Quivira Road  
Overland Park 66215  
Tel. (913) 888-8968

†Component Specialties, Inc.  
8369 Nieman Road  
Lenexa 66214  
Tel: (913) 492-3555

### MARYLAND

Arrow Electronics, Inc.  
4801 Benson Avenue  
Baltimore 21227  
Tel: (301) 247-5200

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
7235 Standard Drive  
Hanover 21076  
Tel (301) 796-5684  
TWX: 710-882-1861

†Pioneer/Washington  
9100 Galther Road  
Gaithersburg 20760  
Tel: (301) 948-0710  
TWX: 710-828-0545

### MASSACHUSETTS

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
50 Tower Office Park  
Woburn 01801  
Tel (617) 273-7500

†Arrow Electronics  
96D Commerce Way  
Woburn 01801  
Tel. (617) 933-8130

Harvey/Boston  
44 Hartwell Ave.  
Lexington 02173  
Tel (617) 861-9200

### MICHIGAN

†Arrow Electronics  
3810 Varsity Drive  
Ann Arbor 48104  
Tel: (313) 971-8220  
TWX: 810-223-6020

†Pioneer/Michigan  
13485 Stamford  
Livonia 48150  
Tel. (313) 525-1800  
TWX: 810-242-3271

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
32487 Schoolcraft Road  
Livonia 48150  
Tel: (313) 522-4700  
TWX: 810-242-8775

### MINNESOTA

†Arrow Electronics  
5230 W. 73rd Street  
Edina 55435  
Tel: (612) 830-1800  
TWX: 910-576-2726

†Industrial Components  
5229 Edina Industrial Blvd  
Minneapolis 55435  
Tel: (612) 831-2666  
TWX: 910-576-3153

### MINNESOTA (cont.)

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
7449 Cahill Road  
Edina 55435  
Tel: (612) 941-3801  
TWX: 910-576-2720

### MISSOURI

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
396 Brookes Lane  
Hazelwood 63042  
Tel: (314) 344-1200  
TWX: 910-762-0606

### NEW HAMPSHIRE

†Arrow Electronics  
1 Perimeter Drive  
Manchester 03103  
Tel: (603) 668-6968

### NEW JERSEY

†Arrow Electronics  
Pleasant Valley Avenue  
Moorestown 08057  
Tel: (609) 235-1900  
TWX: 710-897-0829

†Arrow Electronics  
285 Midland Avenue  
Saddle Brook 07662  
Tel: (201) 797-5800  
TWX: 710-988-2206

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
1 Keystone Ave.  
Bldg 38  
Cherry Hill 08034  
Tel: (609) 424-0100  
TWX: 710-897-1405

†Harvey Electronics  
45 Route 46  
Pinebrook 07058  
Tel: (201) 575-3510  
TWX: 710-734-4382

Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
10 Industrial Road  
Fairfield 07006  
Tel: (201) 575-3390  
TWX: 710-734-4338

### NEW MEXICO

†Alliance Electronics Inc.  
11721 Central Ave. N.E.  
Albuquerque 87123  
Tel: (505) 292-3360  
TWX: 910-989-1151

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
2524 Baylor Drive, S.E.  
Albuquerque 87106  
Tel: (505) 765-1500

### NEW YORK

Arrow Electronics  
900 Broad Hollow Road  
Farmingdale 11735  
Tel: (516) 694-6800  
TWX: 510-224-6494

†Arrow Electronics  
3000 South Winton Road  
Rochester 14623  
Tel: (716) 275-0300  
TWX 910-338-0026

†Arrow Electronics  
7705 Maitlage Drive  
Liverpool 13088  
Tel. (315) 652-1000  
TWX: 710-545-0230

Arrow Electronics  
20 Oser Avenue  
Hauppauge 11787  
Tel (516) 231-1000  
TWX: 510-224-6494

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
167 Clay Road  
Rochester 14623  
Tel: (716) 475-9130  
TWX: 910-340-6364



3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel: (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## U.S. AND CANADIAN DISTRIBUTORS

### NEW YORK (cont.)

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
16 Corporate Circle  
E. Syracuse 13057  
Tel: (315) 437-2641

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
5 Hub Drive  
Melville, Long Island 11746  
Tel: (516) 454-8300  
TWX: 510-252-0893

Harvey Electronics  
P.O. Box 1208  
Binghamton 13902  
Tel: (607) 748-8211  
TWX: 510-252-0893

†Harvey Electronics  
60 Crossways Park West  
Woodbury 11797  
Tel: (516) 921-8700  
TWX: 510-221-2184

Harvey/Rochester  
840 Fairport Park  
Fairport 14450  
Tel: (716) 381-7070

### NORTH CAROLINA

Arrow Electronics  
938 Burke Street  
Winston-Salem 27102  
Tel: (919) 725-8711  
TWX: 510-922-4765

Pioneer/Carolina  
106 Industrial Ave.  
Greensboro 27406  
Tel: (919) 273-4441  
TWX: 510-925-1114

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
2803 Industrial Drive  
Raleigh 27609  
Tel: (919) 829-8030

### OHIO

Arrow Electronics  
7620 McEwen Road  
Centerville 45459  
Tel: (513) 453-5563  
TWX: 810-459-1611

Arrow Electronics  
6238 Cochran Rd.  
Solon 44139  
Tel: (216) 248-3990

Arrow Electronics  
10 Knollcrest Dr.  
Cincinnati 45237  
Tel: (513) 781-5432  
TWX: 810-461-2670

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
954 Senate Drive  
Dayton 45459  
Tel: (513) 433-0610  
TWX: 910-340-2531

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
4588 Emery Industrial Parkway  
Warrensville Heights 44128  
Tel: (216) 831-3500

†Pioneer/Dayton  
1900 Troy Street  
Dayton 45404  
Tel: (513) 238-9900  
TWX: 810-459-1622

†Pioneer/Cleveland  
4800 E. 131st Street  
Cleveland 44105  
Tel: (216) 587-3600  
TWX: 810-422-2210

### OKLAHOMA

†Components Specialties, Inc.  
7920 E. 40th Street  
Tulsa 74145  
Tel: (918) 664-2820  
TWX: 910-845-2215

### OREGON

†Almac/Stroum Electronics  
8022 S.W. Nimbus, Bldg. 7  
Beaverton 97005  
Tel: (503) 841-9070

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
6024 SW Jean Rd.  
Bldg. C, Suite 10  
Lake Oswego 97034  
Tel: (503) 635-8157

### PENNSYLVANIA

†Arrow Electronics  
4297 Greensburg Pike  
Suite 3114  
Pittsburgh 15221  
Tel: (412) 351-4000

Pioneer/Pittsburgh  
560 Alpha Drive  
Pittsburgh 15238  
Tel: (412) 782-2300  
TWX: 710-795-3122

Pioneer/Delaware Valley  
141 Gibraltar Road  
Horsham 19044  
Tel: (215) 674-4000  
TWX: 510-665-6778

### TENNESSEE

†Arrow Electronics  
P.O. Box 129  
W. Andrew Johnson Hwy.  
Talbott 37677  
Tel: (615) 587-2137

### TEXAS

Arrow Electronics  
13715 Gamma Road  
Dallas 75234  
Tel: (214) 386-7500  
TWX: 910-861-5495

Arrow Electronics, Inc.  
10700 Corporate Drive, Suite 100  
Stafford 77477  
Tel: (713) 491-4100

Component Specialties Inc.  
8222 Jamestown Drive  
Suite 115  
Austin 78757  
Tel: (512) 837-8922  
TWX: 910-874-1320

†Component Specialties, Inc.  
10907 Shady Trail, Suite 101  
Dallas 75220  
Tel: (214) 357-8511  
TWX: 910-861-4999

†Component Specialties, Inc.  
8585 Commerce Park Drive, suite 590  
Houston 77036  
Tel: (713) 771-7237  
TWX: 910-881-2422

Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
10508A Boyer Blvd.  
Austin 78757  
Tel: (512) 837-8911

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
4445 Sigma Road  
Dallas 75240  
Tel: (214) 661-8661  
TWX: 910-860-5371

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
3939 Ann Arbor Drive  
Houston 77063  
Tel: (713) 780-1771

### UTAH

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
1585 West 2110 South  
Salt Lake City 84119  
Tel: (801) 972-2800

### WASHINGTON

†Almac/Stroum Electronics  
5811 Sixth Ave. South  
Seattle 98108  
Tel: (206) 763-2300  
TWX: 910-444-2067

Arrow Electronics, Inc.  
Electronics Distribution Division  
1059 Andover Park East  
Tukwila 98168  
Tel: (206) 575-0907

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
14212 N.E. 21st Street  
Bellevue 98005  
Tel: (206) 453-5844

†Wyle Distribution Group  
1750 132nd Avenue NE  
Bellevue 98005  
Tel: (206) 453-8300  
TWX: 910-443-2528

### WISCONSIN

†Arrow Electronics  
430 W. Rawson Avenue  
Oak Creek 53154  
Tel: (414) 784-6600  
TWX: 910-338-0026

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
2975 Moorland Road  
New Berlin 53151  
Tel: (414) 784-4510  
TWX: 910-262-1182

### CANADA

#### ALBERTA

†L.A. Varah Ltd.  
4742 14th Street N.E.  
Calgary T2E 6L7  
Tel: (403) 230-1235  
TWX: 018-258-97

Zentronics  
9224 27th Avenue  
Edmonton T6N 1B2

Zentronics  
3651 21st N.E.  
Calgary T2E 6T5  
Tel: (403) 230-1422

#### BRITISH COLUMBIA

†L.A. Varah Ltd.  
2077 Alberta Street  
Vancouver V5Y 1C4  
Tel: (604) 873-3211  
TWX: 610-929-1068

Zentronics  
550 Cambie St.  
Vancouver V6B 2N7  
Tel: (604) 688-2533  
TWX: 04-5077-89

#### MANITOBA

L.A. Varah  
1-1832 King Edward Street  
Winnipeg R2R 0N1  
Tel: (204) 833-6190  
TWX: 07-55-385

Zentronics  
590 Berry St.  
Winnipeg R9H 0S1  
Tel: (204) 775-8661

### ONTARIO

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
3688 Nashua Drive, Units G & H  
Mississauga L4V 1M5  
Tel: (416) 677-7432  
TWX: 610-492-8860

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
1735 Courtwood Crescent  
Ottawa K2C 3J2  
Tel: (613) 228-1700

†L.A. Varah, Ltd.  
505 Kenora Avenue  
Hamilton L8E 3P2  
Tel: (416) 561-9311  
TWX: 061-8349

†Zentronics  
141 Catherine Street  
Ottawa K2P 1C3  
Tel: (613) 238-6411  
TWX: 053-3636

†Zentronics  
1355 Meyerside Drive  
Mississauga, Ontario L5T 1C9  
Tel: (416) 678-9000  
Telex: 06-983-657

### QUEBEC

†Hamilton/Avnet Electronics  
2670 Sabourin Street  
St. Laurent H4S 1M2  
Tel: (514) 331-6443  
TWX: 610-421-3731

Zentronics  
5010 Pare Street  
Montreal H4P 1P3  
Tel: (514) 735-5361  
TWX: 05-827-535



# INTERNATIONAL SALES AND MARKETING OFFICES

3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel: (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## INTERNATIONAL DISTRIBUTORS/REPRESENTATIVES

### ARGENTINA

Micro Sistemas S.A.  
9 De Julio 561  
Cordoba  
Tel: 54-51-32-880  
TELEX: 51837 BICCO

### AUSTRALIA

A J F. Systems & Components Pty. Ltd.  
310 Queen Street  
Melbourne  
Victoria 3000  
Tel:  
TELEX.

Warburton Franki  
Corporate Headquarters  
372 Eastern Valley Way  
Chatswood, New South Wales 2067  
Tel 407-3261  
TELEX: AA 21299

### AUSTRIA

Bacher Elektronische Gerate GmbH  
Rotenmullgasse 26  
A 1120 Vienna  
Tel: (0222) 83 63 96  
TELEX: (01) 1532  
Rekirsch Elektronik Gerate GmbH  
Lichtensteinstrasse 97  
A1000 Vienna  
Tel. (222) 347646  
TELEX. 74759

### BELGIUM

Inelco Belgium S.A.  
Ave. des Croix de Guerre 94  
B1120 Brussels  
Tel. (02) 216 01 60  
TELEX: 25441

### BRAZIL

Icotron S.A.  
0511-Av. Mullinga 3650  
6 Andar  
Pirituba-Sao Paulo  
Tel 261-0211  
TELEX: (011) 222 ICO BR

### CHILE

DIN  
Av. Vic. Mc kenna 204  
Casilla 6055  
Santiago  
Tel: 227 564  
TELEX: 3520003

### CHINA

C.M. Technologies  
525 University Avenue  
Suite A-40  
Palo Alto, CA 94301

### COLOMBIA

International Computer Machines  
Adpo Aereo 19403  
Bogota 1  
Tel. 232-6635  
TELEX 43439

### CYPRUS

Cyprus Eltrom Electronics  
P.O. Box 5393  
Nicosia  
Tel: 21-27982

### DENMARK

STL-Lyngso Komponent A/S  
Ostmarken 4  
DK-2860 Soborg  
Tel: (01) 67 00 77  
TELEX: 22990

Scandinavian Semiconductor  
Supply A/S  
Nannasgade 18  
DK-2200 Copenhagen  
Tel. (01) 83 50 90  
TELEX: 19037

### FINLAND

Oy Fintron AB  
Melkonkatu 24 A  
SF-00210  
Helsinki 21  
Tel. 0-692 6022  
TELEX: 124 224 Ftron SF

### FRANCE

Celdis S.A.\*  
53, Rue Charles Freret  
F-94250 Gentilly  
Tel: (1) 581 00 20  
TELEX: 200 485  
Feutrier  
Rue des Trois Glorieuses  
F-42270 St. Priest-en-Jarez  
Tel: (77) 74 67 33  
TELEX: 300 0 21

Metrologie\*  
La Tour d'Asneres  
4, Avenue Laurent Cely  
92606-Asneres  
Tel: 791 44 44  
TELEX: 611 448

Tekelec Airtronc\*  
Cite des Bruyeres  
Rue Carle Vernet  
F-92310 Sevres  
Tel. (1) 534 75 35  
TELEX: 204552

### GERMANY

Electronic 2000 Vertriebs GmbH  
Neumarkter Strasse 75  
D-8000 Munich 80  
Tel. (089) 434061  
TELEX: 522561

Jermyn GmbH  
Postfach 1180  
D-6077 Camberg  
Tel. (06434) 231  
TELEX: 484426

Kontron Elektronik GmbH  
Breslauerstrasse 2  
8057 Eching B  
D-8000 Munich  
Tel. (89) 319 011  
TELEX: 522122

Neye Enatechnik GmbH  
Schillerstrasse 14  
D-2085 Quickborn-Hamburg  
Tel. (04106) 6121  
TELEX: 02-13590

### GREECE

American Technical Enterprises  
P.O. Box 156  
Athens  
Tel 30-1-8811271  
30-1-8219470

### HONG KONG

Schmidt & Co.  
28/F Wing on Center  
Connaught Road  
Hong Kong  
Tel 5-455-644  
TELEX: 74766 Schmc Hx

### INDIA

Micronic Devices  
104/109C, Nirmla Industrial Estate  
Slon (E)  
Bombay 400022, India  
Tel: 486-170  
TELEX: 011-5947 MDEV IN

### ISRAEL

Eastronics Ltd.\*  
11 Rozanis Street  
P.O. Box 39300  
Tel Aviv 61390  
Tel: 475151  
TELEX: 33638

### ITALY

Eledra 3S S.P.A.\*  
Viale Elvezia, 18  
I 20154 Milan  
Tel: (02) 34 93.041-31.85.441  
TELEX: 332332

### JAPAN

Asahi Electronics Co. Ltd.  
KMM Bldg. Room 407  
2-14-1 Asano, Kokura  
Kita-Ku, Kitakyushu City 802  
Tel: (093) 511-6471  
TELEX: AEOKY 7126-16  
Hamilton-Avnet Electronics Japan Ltd.  
YU and YOU Bldg. 1-4 Horidome-Cho  
Nihonbashi  
Tel: (03) 662-9911  
TELEX: 2523774

Ryoyo Electric Corp  
Konwa Bldg  
1-12-22, Tsukiji, 1-Chome  
Chuo-Ku, Tokyo 104  
Tel (03) 543-7711

Tokyo Electron Ltd.  
No. 1 Higashikata-Machi  
Midori-Ku, Yokohama 226  
Tel: (045) 471-8811  
TELEX: 781-4473

### KOREA

Koram Digital  
Room 909 Woonam Bldg.  
7, 1-KA Bongre-Dong  
Chung-Ku Seoul  
Tel: 23-8123  
TELEX: K23542 HANSINT  
Leewood International, Inc.  
C.P.O. Box 4046  
112-25, Sokong-Dong  
Chung-Ku, Seoul 100  
Tel. 28-5927  
CABLE: "LEEWOOD" Seoul

### NETHERLANDS

Inelco Nether. Comp. Sys. BV  
Turfsteckerstraat 63  
Aalsmeer 1431 D  
Tel (2977) 28855  
TELEX: 14693  
Koning & Hartman  
Koperwerf 30  
2544 EN Den Haag  
Tel. (70) 210.101  
TELEX: 31528

### NEW ZEALAND

W. K. McLean Ltd.  
P.O. Box 18-065  
Glenn Innes, Auckland, 6  
Tel: 587-037  
TELEX: NZZ2763 KOSFY

### NORWAY

Nordisk Elektronik (Norge) A/S  
Postoffice Box 122  
Smedsvingen 4  
1364 Hvalstad  
Tel: 02 78 62 10  
TELEX 17546

### PORTUGAL

Ditram  
Componentes E Electronica LDA  
Av. Miguel Bombarda, 133  
Lisboa 1  
Tel: (19) 545313  
TELEX: 14347 GESPIC

### SINGAPORE

General Engineers Associates  
Blk 3, 1003-1008, 10th Floor  
P.S.A. Multi-Storey Complex  
Telok Blangah/Pasir Panjang  
Singapore 5  
Tel 271-3163  
TELEX RS23987 GENERCO

### SOUTH AFRICA

Electronic Building Elements  
Pine Square  
18th Street  
Hazelwood, Pretoria 0001  
Tel 789 221  
TELEX: 30181SA

### SPAIN

Interface S.A  
Ronda San Pedro 22, 3\*  
Barcelona 10  
Tel: 301 78 51  
TWX: 51508  
ITT SESA  
Miguel Angel 16  
Madrid 10  
Tel. (1) 4190957  
TELEX: 27707/27461

### SWEDEN

AB Gosta Backstrom  
Box 12009  
10221 Stockholm  
Tel (08) 541 080  
TELEX: 10135  
Nordisk Elektronik AB  
Box 27301  
S-10254 Stockholm  
Tel (08) 635040  
TELEX: 10547

### SWITZERLAND

Industrade AG  
Gemsenstrasse 2  
Postcheck 80 - 21190  
CH-8021 Zurich  
Tel: (01) 60 22 30  
TELEX: 56788

### TAIWAN

Taiwan Automation Co.\*  
3d Floor #75, Section 4  
Nanking East Road  
Taipei  
Tel: 771-0940  
TELEX: 11942 TAIATAO

### TURKEY

Turkelek Electronics  
Aparukr Boulevard 169  
Ankara  
Tel: 189483

### UNITED KINGDOM

Comway Microsystems Ltd.  
Market Street  
68-Bracknell, Berkshire  
Tel: (344) 51654  
TELEX: 847201  
G E.C. Semiconductors Ltd.  
East Lane  
North Wembley  
Middlesex HA9 7PP  
Tel: (01) 904-9303/908-4111  
TELEX: 28817

Jermyn Industries  
Vestry Estate  
Sevenoaks, Kent  
Tel: (0732) 501.44  
TELEX: 95142

Rapid Recall, Ltd.  
6 Soho Mills Ind. Park  
Wooburn Green  
Bucks, England  
Tel: (6285) 24961  
TELEX 849439

Sintron Electronics Ltd.\*  
Arkwright Road 2  
Reading, Berkshire RG2 0LS  
Tel (0734) 85464  
TELEX: 847395

### VENEZUELA

Componentes y Circuitos  
Electronicos TTLCA C.A.  
Apartado 3223  
Caracas 101  
Tel: 718-100  
TELEX: 21795 TELETIPOS

\*Field Application Location



3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel: (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## INTERNATIONAL SALES AND MARKETING OFFICES

### INTEL® MARKETING OFFICES

#### AUSTRALIA

Intel Australia  
Suite 2, Level 15, North Point  
100 Miller Street  
North Sydney, NSW, 2060  
Tel: 450-847  
TELEX: AA 20097

#### BELGIUM

Intel Corporation S.A.  
Rue du Moulin a Papier 51  
Boite 1  
B-1160 Brussels  
Tel: (02) 660 30 10  
TELEX: 24814

#### DENMARK

Intel Denmark A/S\*  
Lyngbyvej 32 2nd Floor  
DK-2100 Copenhagen East  
Tel: (01) 18 20 00  
TELEX: 19567

#### FINLAND

Intel Scandinavia  
Sentienkuja 3  
SF - 00400 Helsinki 40  
Tel: (0) 558531  
TELEX: 123 332

#### FRANCE

Intel Corporation, S.A.R.L.\*  
5 Place de la Balance  
Silic 223  
94528 Rungis Cedex  
Tel: (01) 687 22 21  
TELEX: 270475

#### GERMANY

Intel Semiconductor GmbH\*  
Seldistrasse 27  
8000 Muenchen 2  
Tel: (089) 53 891  
TELEX: 523 177

Intel Semiconductor GmbH  
Mainzer Strasse 75  
6200 Wiesbaden 1  
Tel: (06121) 700874  
TELEX: 04186183

Intel Semiconductor GmbH  
Wernerstrasse 67  
P.O. Box 1460  
7012 Fellbach  
Tel: (0711) 590082  
TELEX: 7254826

Intel Semiconductor GmbH  
Hindenburgstrasse 28/29  
3000 Hannover 1  
Tel: (0511) 852051  
TELEX: 923625

#### HONG KONG

Intel Trading Corporation  
99-105 Des Voeux Rd., Central  
18F, Unit B  
Hong Kong  
Tel: 5-450-847  
TELEX: 63869

#### ISRAEL

Intel Semiconductor Ltd.\*  
P.O. Box 2404  
Haifa  
Tel: 972/452 4261  
TELEX: 92246511

#### ITALY

Intel Corporation Italia, S.p.A.  
Corso Sempione 39  
I-20145 Milano  
Tel: 2/34.93287  
TELEX: 311271

#### JAPAN

Intel Japan K.K.\*  
Flower Hill-Shinmachi East Bldg.  
1-23-9, Shinmachi, Setagaya-ku  
Tokyo 154  
Tel: (03) 426-9261  
TELEX: 781-28426

#### NETHERLANDS

Intel Semiconductor B.V.  
Cometongebouw  
Westblaak 106  
3012 Km Rotterdam  
Tel: (10) 149122  
TELEX: 22283

#### NORWAY

Intel Norway A/S  
P.O. Box 92  
Hvamveien 4  
N-2013  
Skjeltten  
Tel: (2) 742 420  
TELEX: 18018

#### SWEDEN

Intel Sweden A.B.\*  
Box 20092  
Alpvagen 17  
S-16120 Bromma  
Tel: (08) 98 53 90  
TELEX: 12261

#### SWITZERLAND

Intel Semiconductor A.G.  
Forchstrasse 95  
CH 8032 Zurich  
Tel: 1-55 45 02  
TELEX: 557 89 ich ch

#### UNITED KINGDOM

Intel Corporation (U.K.) Ltd.  
Broadfield House  
4 Between Towns Road  
Cowley, Oxford OX4 3NB  
Tel: (0865) 77 14 31  
TELEX: 837203

Intel Corporation (U.K.) Ltd.\*  
5 Hospital Street  
Nantwich, Cheshire CW5 5RE  
Tel: (0270) 62 65 60  
TELEX: 36620

Intel Corporation (U.K.) Ltd.  
Dorcan House  
Eldine Drive  
Swindon, Wiltshire SN3 3TU  
Tel: (0793) 25101  
TELEX: 444447 INT SWN



3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051  
Tel. (408) 987-8080  
TWX: 910-338-0026  
TELEX: 34-6372

## U.S. AND CANADIAN SERVICE OFFICES

### CALIFORNIA

Intel Corp.  
1601 Old Bayshore Hwy  
Suite 345  
Burlingame 94010  
Tel (415) 692-4762  
TWX: 910-375-3310

Intel Corp.  
2000 E. 4th Street  
Suite 100  
Santa Ana 92705  
Tel: (714) 835-9642  
TWX: 910-595-1114

Intel Corp.  
7670 Opportunity Road  
San Diego 92111  
Tel (714) 268-3563

Intel Corp.  
3375 Scott Blvd.  
Santa Clara 95051  
Tel. (408) 987-8086

Intel Corp.  
15335 Morrison  
Sherman Oaks 91403  
Tel: (213) 986-9510

### COLORADO

Intel Corp.  
650 South Cherry  
Suite 720  
Denver, 80222  
Tel: (303) 321-8086  
TWX: 910-931-2289

### FLORIDA

Intel Corp.  
1001 N.W. 62nd Street  
Suite 406  
Ft. Lauderdale 33309  
Tel: (305) 771-0600  
TWX: 510-956-9407

### ILLINOIS

Intel Corp.  
2550 Golf Road  
Suite 815  
Rolling Meadows 60008  
Tel: (312) 981-7230  
TWX: 910-253-1825

### KANSAS

Intel Corp.  
9393 W. 110th Street  
Suite 265  
Overland Park 66210  
Tel: (913) 642-8080

### MARYLAND

Intel Corp.  
7257 Parkway Drive  
Hanover 21076  
Tel: (301) 796-7500  
TWX: 710-862-1944

### MASSACHUSETTS

Intel Corp.  
27 Industrial Avenue  
Chelmsford 01824  
Tel (617) 667-8126  
TWX: 710-343-6333

### MICHIGAN

Intel Corp.  
26500 Northwestern Hwy.  
Suite 401  
Southfield 48075  
Tel: (313) 353-0920  
TWX: 810-244-4915

### MINNESOTA

Intel Corp.  
7401 Metro Blvd.  
Suite 355  
Edina 55435  
Tel (612) 835-6722  
TWX: 910-576-2867

### MISSOURI

Intel Corp.  
502 Earth City Plaza  
Suite 121  
Earth City 63045  
Tel (314) 291-1990

### NEW JERSEY

Intel Corp.  
2450 Lemoine Avenue  
Ft. Lee 07024  
Tel. (201) 947-6267  
TWX: 710-991-8593

### OHIO

Intel Corp.  
Chagrin-Brainard Bldg #210  
28001 Chagrin Blvd.  
Cleveland 44122  
Tel: (216) 464-2736  
TWX: 810-427-9298

Intel Corp.  
6500 Poe Avenue  
Dayton 45414  
Tel. (513) 890-5350  
TWX: 810-450-2528

### OREGON

Intel Corp.  
10700 S.W. Beaverton-Hillsdale Hwy.  
Bldg 2, Suite 324  
Beaverton 97005  
Tel: (503) 641-8086  
TWX: 910-467-8741

### PENNSYLVANIA

Intel Corp.  
275 Commerce Drive  
200 Office Center  
Suite 300  
Fort Washington 19034  
Tel: (215) 542-9444  
TWX: 510-651-2077

### TEXAS

Intel Corp.  
313 E. Anderson Lane  
Suite 314  
Austin 78752  
Tel: (512) 454-3628  
TWX: 910-874-1347

Intel Corp.  
2925 L.B.J. Freeway  
Suite 175  
Dallas 75234  
Tel: (214) 241-2820  
TWX: 910-860-5617

Intel Corp.  
6420 Richmond Avenue  
Suite 280  
Houston 77057  
Tel: (713) 784-1300  
TWX: 910-881-2490

### VIRGINIA

Intel Corp.  
7700 Leesburg Pike  
Suite 412  
Falls Church 22043  
Tel: (703) 734-9707  
TWX: 710-931-0625

### WASHINGTON

Intel Corp.  
1603 116th Ave. N.E.  
Suite 114  
Bellevue 98005  
Tel: (206) 232-7823  
TWX: 910-443-3002

### WISCONSIN

Intel Corp.  
150 S. Sunnyslope Road  
Suite 148  
Brookfield 53005  
Tel (414) 784-9060

### CANADA

Intel Corp.  
50 Galaxy Blvd.  
Unit 12  
Rexdale, Ontario  
M9W4Y5  
Tel. (416) 675-2105  
Telex: 069-83574

Intel Corp.  
39 Hwy. 7, Bells Corners  
Ottawa, Ontario  
K2H 8R2  
Tel (613) 829-9714  
Telex: 053-4115



NO POSTAGE  
NECESSARY IF MAILED  
IN THE U.S.

**BUSINESS REPLY CARD**  
FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 621, SANTA CLARA, CA



*Postage will be paid by Addressee:*

**Intel Corporation**  
**Attn:** Literature Department  
3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, California 95051

**I'd like to receive free information on the following Intel products:**

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 16-Bit Microprocessors                            | <input type="checkbox"/> EPROMs                 | <input type="checkbox"/> Software High-Level Languages ( _____ ) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 8-Bit Microprocessors                             | <input type="checkbox"/> Signal Processors      | <input type="checkbox"/> Macro Assemblers                        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Single-Chip Microcontrollers                      | <input type="checkbox"/> Bubble Memories        | <input type="checkbox"/> Operating Systems (RMX 80/86™)          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Peripheral Controllers                            | <input type="checkbox"/> Single Board Computers | <input type="checkbox"/> Workshops                               |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Static RAMs <input type="checkbox"/> Dynamic RAMs | <input type="checkbox"/> Development Systems    |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Telecom Products                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Military Products      |  |

**Additionally, I'd like to receive free:**

- Intel's Literature Catalog  
 Lists Intel's major technical catalogs and manuals.

I have an immediate requirement. Please contact me. My application is \_\_\_\_\_

**I'd like to purchase the following catalogs:**

- MCS-86™ Family User's Manual — \$7.50
- 1980 Component Data Catalog — \$7.50
- 1980 Systems Data Catalog — \$5.00
- Peripheral Design Handbook — \$7.50

(Prices are subject to change without notice.)

To order send check, money order or use your VISA or MasterCard.

Account No. \_\_\_\_\_  VISA  MasterCard

Expiration Date \_\_\_\_\_

I have a need in \_\_\_\_\_ months for the following Intel Products.

| Product | Quantity | Product | Quantity |
|---------|----------|---------|----------|
| _____   | _____    | _____   | _____    |
| _____   | _____    | _____   | _____    |
| _____   | _____    | _____   | _____    |

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Company: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City, State: \_\_\_\_\_

Zip: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_



Intel Corporation  
3065 Bowers Avenue  
Santa Clara, CA 95051  
(408) 987-8080

Intel Corporation  
Rue du Moulin à Papier 51, Boite 1,  
B-1160 Brussels, Belgium

Intel Corporation  
Flower Hill-Shinmachi East Bldg.  
1-23-9, Shinmachi, Setagayu-ku  
Tokyo 154, Japan